

# ASTRA

Owner's Manual





---

# Contents

|                                |     |
|--------------------------------|-----|
| Introduction .....             | 2   |
| In brief .....                 | 6   |
| Keys, doors and windows .....  | 21  |
| Seats, restraints .....        | 48  |
| Storage .....                  | 71  |
| Instruments and controls ..... | 90  |
| Lighting .....                 | 128 |
| Climate control .....          | 139 |
| Driving and operating .....    | 149 |
| Vehicle care .....             | 220 |
| Service and maintenance .....  | 270 |
| Technical data .....           | 273 |
| Customer information .....     | 284 |
| Index .....                    | 294 |

# Introduction

|               |                             |                      |                      |                      |
|---------------|-----------------------------|----------------------|----------------------|----------------------|
| Fuel          | Designation                 | <input type="text"/> |                      |                      |
| Engine oil    | Grade                       | <input type="text"/> |                      |                      |
|               | Viscosity                   | <input type="text"/> |                      |                      |
| Tyre pressure | Tyre size                   |                      | Front                | Rear                 |
|               | Summer tyres                | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> |
|               | Winter tyres                | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> |
| Weights       | Gross vehicle weight rating | <input type="text"/> |                      |                      |
|               | - Kerb weight, basic model  | <input type="text"/> |                      |                      |
|               | = Loading                   | <input type="text"/> |                      |                      |



## Vehicle specific data

Please enter your vehicle's data on the previous page to keep it easily accessible.

Refer to the sections "Service and maintenance", "Technical data", the vehicle's identification plate and national registration documents.

## Introduction

Your vehicle is a designed combination of advanced technology, safety, environmental friendliness and economy.

This Owner's Manual provides you with all the necessary information to enable you to drive your vehicle safely and efficiently.

Make sure your passengers are aware of the possible risk of accident and injury which may result from improper use of the vehicle.

You must always comply with the specific laws and regulations of the country that you are in. These laws may differ from the information in this Owner's Manual.

Disregarding the description given in this manual may affect your warranty.

When this Owner's Manual refers to a workshop visit, we recommend your Opel Service Partner.

For gas vehicles we recommend an Opel Repairer authorised for servicing gas vehicles.

All Opel Service Partners provide first-class service at reasonable prices. Experienced mechanics trained by Opel work according to specific Opel instructions.

The customer literature pack should always be kept ready to hand in the vehicle.

## Using this manual

- This manual describes all options and features available for this model. **Certain descriptions, including those for display and menu functions, may not apply to your vehicle due to model variant, country specifications, special equipment or accessories.**

- The "In brief" section will give you an initial overview.
- The table of contents at the beginning of this manual and within each section shows where the information is located.
- The index will enable you to search for specific information.
- This Owner's Manual depicts left-hand drive vehicles. Operation is similar for right-hand drive vehicles.
- The Owner's Manual uses the engine identifier code. The corresponding sales designation and engineering code can be found in the section "Technical data".
- Directional data, e.g. left or right, or front or back, always relate to the direction of travel.
- Displays may not support your specific language.
- Display messages and interior labelling are written in **bold** letters.

## Danger, Warnings and Cautions

### **Danger**

Text marked **⚠ Danger** provides information on risk of fatal injury. Disregarding this information may endanger life.

### **Warning**

Text marked **⚠ Warning** provides information on risk of accident or injury. Disregarding this information may lead to injury.

### **Caution**

Text marked **Caution** provides information on possible damage to the vehicle. Disregarding this information may lead to vehicle damage.

## Symbols

Page references are indicated with ⇨. ⇨ means "see page".

Page references and index entries refer to the indented headings given in the section table of content.

Chronological order to select menu entries in the vehicle personalisation is indicated with ➤.

We wish you many hours of pleasurable driving.

**Your Opel Team**




## In brief

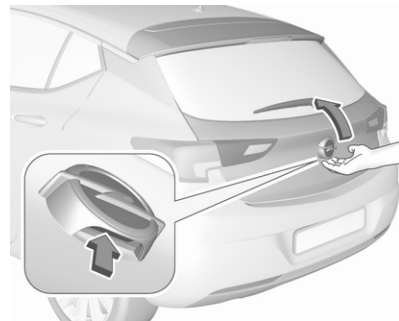
### Initial drive information

#### Vehicle unlocking



Press  to unlock the doors and load compartment. Open the doors by pulling the handles.

#### Tailgate



5-door Hatchback: to open the tailgate, push the tailgate button below the brand emblem.

Sports Tourer: to open the tailgate, push the tailgate button under the tailgate moulding.

Radio remote control ⇨ 22.

Central locking system ⇨ 26.

Electronic key system ⇨ 23.

Load compartment ⇨ 32.

## Seat adjustment

### Longitudinal adjustment



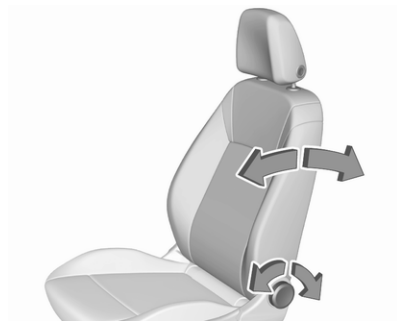
Pull handle, slide seat, release handle. Try to move the seat back and forth to ensure that the seat is locked in place.

Seat position ⇄ 49.

Manual seat adjustment ⇄ 50.

Power seat adjustment ⇄ 52.

### Backrests inclination



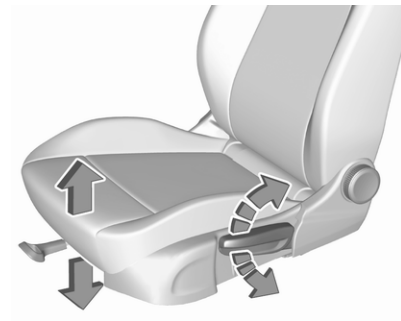
Turn handwheel. Do not lean on backrest when adjusting.

Seat position ⇄ 49.

Manual seat adjustment ⇄ 50.

Power seat adjustment ⇄ 52.

### Seat height



Lever pumping motion

up : seat higher

down : seat lower

Seat position ⇄ 49.

Manual seat adjustment ⇄ 50.

Power seat adjustment ⇄ 52.

### Seat inclination



Press switch

top : front end higher

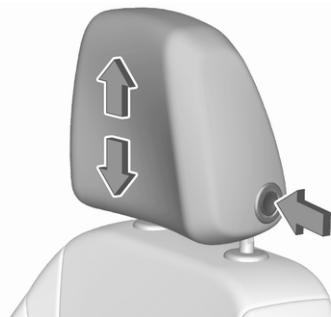
bottom : front end lower

Seat position ⇨ 49.

Manual seat adjustment ⇨ 50.

Power seat adjustment ⇨ 52.

### Head restraint adjustment



Press release button, adjust height, engage.

Head restraints ⇨ 48.

### Seat belt



Pull out the seat belt and fasten in belt buckle. The seat belt must not be twisted and must fit close against the body. The backrest must not be tilted back too far (maximum approx. 25°).

To unfasten belt, press red button on belt buckle.

Seat position ⇨ 49.

Seat belts ⇨ 58.

Airbag system ⇨ 60.

## Mirror adjustment

### Interior mirror

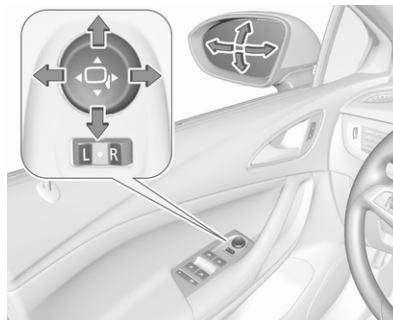


To adjust the mirror, move the mirror housing in the desired direction.

Manual anti-dazzle interior mirror  
↗ 42.

Automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror  
↗ 42.

### Exterior mirrors



Select the relevant exterior mirror by switching the rocker control to left mirror (**L**) or right mirror (**R**). Adjust respective mirror by the four-way control.

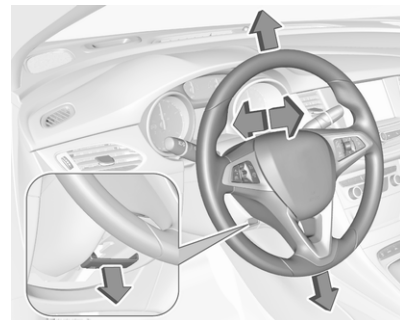
Convex exterior mirrors ↗ 40.

Electric adjustment ↗ 40.

Folding exterior mirrors ↗ 41.

Heated exterior mirrors ↗ 41.

## Steering wheel adjustment



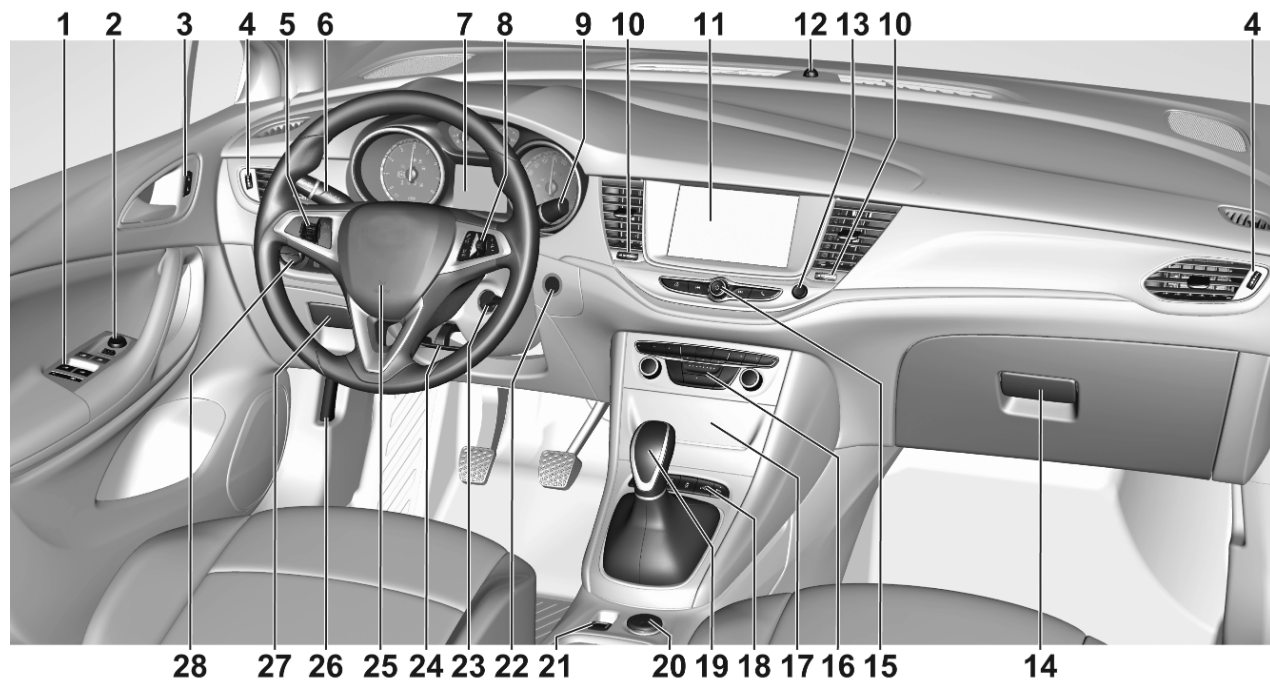
Unlock the lever, adjust the steering wheel, then engage the lever and ensure it is fully locked.

Do not adjust the steering wheel unless the vehicle is stationary and the steering wheel lock has been released.

Airbag system ↗ 60.

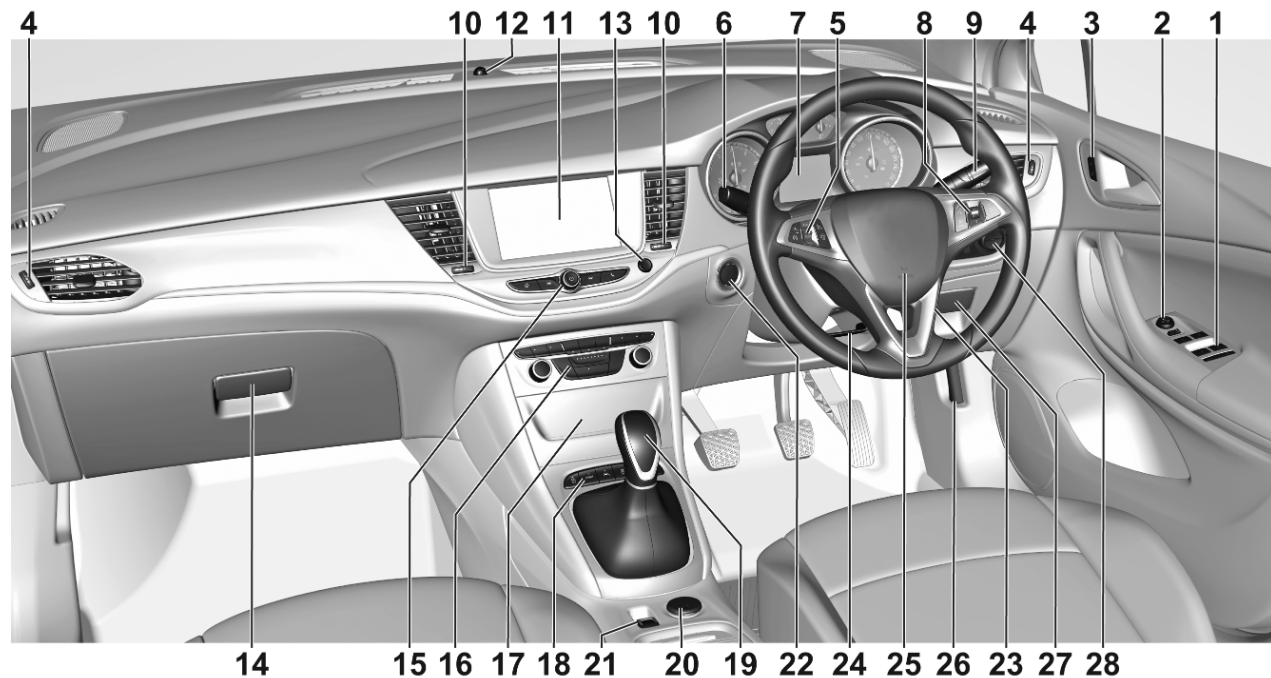
Ignition positions ↗ 150.

## Instrument panel overview





|           |   |     |           |   |     |           |                                     |     |
|-----------|---|-----|-----------|---|-----|-----------|-------------------------------------|-----|
| <b>1</b>  | Power windows .....   | 43  | <b>11</b> | Info Display .....                                | 119 | <b>26</b> | Bonnet release lever .....          | 222 |
| <b>2</b>  | Exterior mirrors .....  | 40  | <b>12</b> | Anti-theft alarm system<br>status LED .....       | 37  | <b>27</b> | Storage compartment .....           | 72  |
| <b>3</b>  | Central locking system .....  | 26  | <b>13</b> | Hazard warning flashers ....                      | 133 | <b>28</b> | Light switch .....                  | 128 |
| <b>4</b>  | Side air vents .....  | 147 | <b>14</b> | Glovebox .....                                    | 71  |           | Headlight range<br>adjustment ..... | 131 |
| <b>5</b>  | Cruise control .....  | 174 | <b>15</b> | Controls for Info Display<br>operation .....      | 119 |           | Front / rear fog lights .....       | 134 |
|           | Speed limiter .....   | 176 | <b>16</b> | Climate control system .....                      | 139 |           | Instrument illumination .....       | 135 |
|           | Adaptive cruise control .....   | 177 | <b>17</b> | Fuse box .....                                    | 242 |           |                                     |     |
|           | Forward collision alert .....   | 185 | <b>18</b> | Traction Control system ....                      | 171 |           |                                     |     |
| <b>6</b>  | Turn lights, headlight<br>flash, low / high beam,<br>high beam assist ..... | 134 |           | Electronic Stability Control .                    | 172 |           |                                     |     |
|           | Exit lighting .....   | 137 |           | Parking assist / Advanced<br>parking assist ..... | 193 |           |                                     |     |
|           | Parking lights .....  | 135 |           | Lane keep assist .....                            | 208 |           |                                     |     |
|           | Buttons for Driver<br>Information Centre .....                              | 113 |           | Eco button for stop-start<br>system .....         | 155 |           |                                     |     |
| <b>7</b>  | Instruments .....   | 102 | <b>19</b> | Manual transmission .....                         | 168 |           |                                     |     |
|           | Driver Information Centre ....  | 113 |           | Automatic transmission .....                      | 164 |           |                                     |     |
| <b>8</b>  | Buttons for Driver<br>Information Centre .....                              | 113 | <b>20</b> | Power outlet .....                                | 95  |           |                                     |     |
| <b>9</b>  | Windscreen wiper and<br>washer, rear wiper and<br>washer .....              | 92  | <b>21</b> | Parking brake .....                               | 169 |           |                                     |     |
| <b>10</b> | Centre air vents .....  | 147 | <b>22</b> | Power button .....                                | 151 |           |                                     |     |
|           |   |     | <b>23</b> | Ignition switch .....                             | 150 |           |                                     |     |
|           |   |     | <b>24</b> | Steering wheel adjustment .                       | 91  |           |                                     |     |
|           |   |     | <b>25</b> | Horn .....  | 92  |           |                                     |     |



## Exterior lighting



**AUTO** : automatic light control  
switches automatically  
between daytime running  
light and headlight

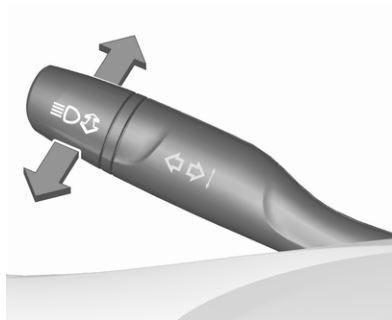
: sidelights  
 : headlights

Automatic light control ⇨ 129.

Front fog lights ⇨ 134.

Rear fog light ⇨ 134.

## Headlight flash, high beam and low beam



headlight flash : pull lever  
high beam : push lever  
low beam : push or pull lever

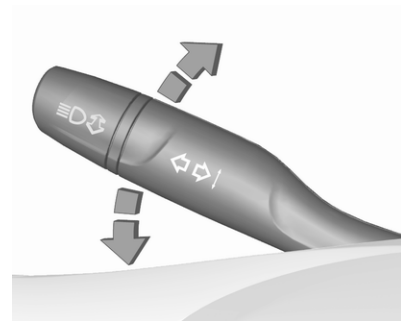
High beam ⇨ 131.

Headlight flash ⇨ 131.

LED headlights ⇨ 132.

High beam assist ⇨ 132.

## Turn lights




lever up : right turn lights  
lever down : left turn lights

Turn lights ⇨ 134.

Parking lights ⇨ 135.

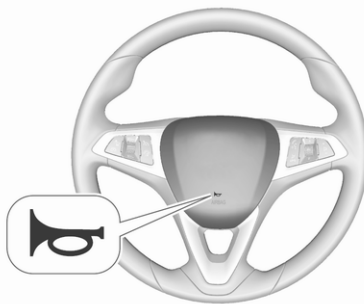
## Hazard warning flashers



Operated by pressing .

Hazard warning flashers ⇨ 133.

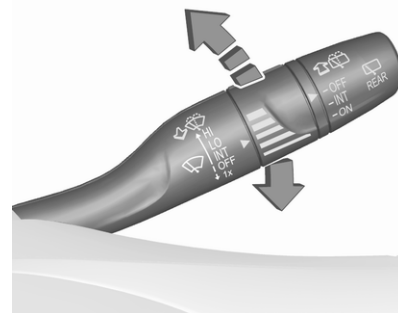
## Horn



Press .

## Washer and wiper systems

### Windscreen wiper

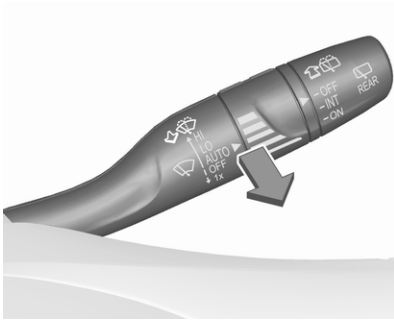


**HI** : fast  
**LO** : slow  
**INT** : interval wiping  
 or  
 automatic wiping with rain sensor  
**OFF** : off

For single wipe when the wiper is off, press lever down to position **1x**.

Windscreen wiper ⇨ 92.

## Windscreen washer



Pull lever.

Windscreen washer system ⇨ 92.

Washer fluid ⇨ 225.

Wiper blade replacement ⇨ 228.

## Rear window wiper

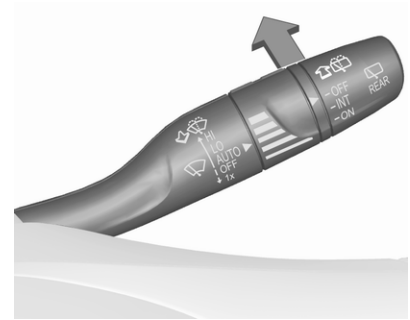


**OFF** : off

**INT** : intermittent operation

**ON** : continuous operation

## Rear window washer



Push lever.


Washer fluid is sprayed on the rear window and the wiper wipes a few times.

Rear window wiper and washer  
⇨ 94.

## Climate control


### Heated rear window



The heating is operated by pressing .

Heated rear window ⇨ 45.


### Heated exterior mirrors

Pressing  also activates the heated exterior mirrors.

Heated exterior mirrors ⇨ 41.

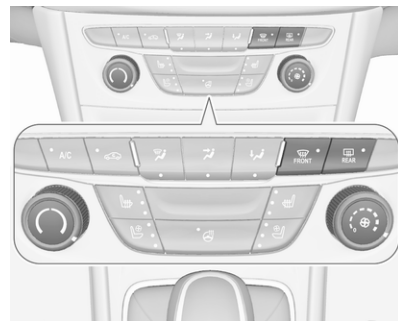
### Heated windscreen





Operated by pressing .

Heated windscreen ⇨ 45.

### Demisting and defrosting the windows



- Press : the air distribution is directed towards the windscreen.
- Set fan speed to highest level.
- Set temperature control to warmest level.
- Switch on heated rear window .
- Open side air vents as required and direct them towards the door windows.

Air conditioning system ⇨ 139.

## Demisting and defrosting the windows, electronic climate control



Press .

Temperature and air distribution are set automatically and the fan runs at high speed.

Switch on heated rear window .

Electronic climate control system  
⇨ 141.

## Transmission

### Manual transmission



Reverse: with the vehicle stationary, depress clutch pedal and press the release button on the selector lever and engage the gear.

Manual transmission ⇨ 168.

### Automatic transmission



- P** : park position
- R** : reverse
- N** : neutral mode
- D** : automatic mode
- M** : manual mode
- +** : upshift
- : downshift

The selector lever can only be moved out of **P** when the ignition is on and the brake pedal is applied. To engage **P** or **R**, press the release button.

Automatic transmission ⇨ 164.

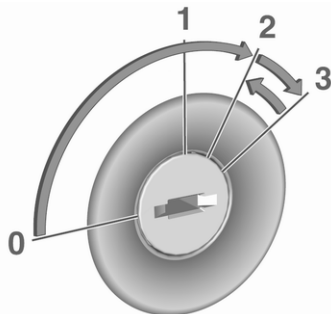
## Starting off

### Check before starting off


- tyre pressure ⇨ 248 and condition ⇨ 282
- engine oil level and fluid levels ⇨ 223
- all windows, mirrors, exterior lighting and number plates are free from dirt, snow and ice and are operational
- proper position of mirrors ⇨ 40, seats ⇨ 49 and seat belts ⇨ 59
- brake function at low speed, particularly if the brakes are wet

## Starting the engine

### Ignition switch




- Turn key to position **2**.
- Move the steering wheel slightly to release the steering wheel lock.
- Manual transmission: operate clutch and brake pedal.  
Automatic transmission: operate brake pedal and move selector lever to **P** or **N**.
- Do not operate accelerator pedal.

- Diesel engines: wait until control indicator  for preheating extinguishes.
- Turn key to position **3** and release after engine has been started.

Starting the engine ⇨ 153.

To turn the key back from position **2** to **1** or **0**, first push the key all the way in towards the steering column.

### Power button

- Press **Engine Start/Stop** for a few seconds until green LED illuminates.
- Move the steering wheel slightly to release the steering wheel lock.
- Manual transmission: operate clutch and brake pedal.  
Automatic transmission: operate brake pedal and move selector lever to **P** or **N**.
- Do not operate accelerator pedal.
- Diesel engines: wait until control indicator  for preheating extinguishes.





- Press **Engine Start/Stop** and release.

Starting the engine ⇨ 153.

## Stop-start system



If the vehicle is at a low speed or at a standstill and certain conditions are fulfilled, an Autostop is activated.

An Autostop is indicated by the needle at the **AUTOSTOP** position in the tachometer.

Stop-start system ⇨ 155.

## Parking

### ⚠ Warning

- Do not park the vehicle on an easily ignitable surface. The high temperature of the exhaust system could ignite the surface.
- Always apply the parking brake. Activate the manual parking brake without pressing the release button. Apply as firmly as possible on a downhill slope or uphill slope. Depress brake pedal at the same time to reduce operating force.

For vehicles with electric parking brake, pull switch (P) for a minimum of 1 second until control indicator (P) illuminates constantly and electric parking brake is applied ⇨ 108.


- Switch off the engine.
- If the vehicle is on a level surface or uphill slope, engage first gear or set the selector

lever to position **P** before removing the ignition key or switching off ignition on vehicles with power button. On an uphill slope, turn the front wheels away from the kerb.

If the vehicle is on a downhill slope, engage reverse gear or set the selector lever to position **P** before removing the ignition key or switching off ignition on vehicles with power button. Turn the front wheels towards the kerb.

- Close the windows and the sunroof.
- Remove the ignition key from the ignition switch or switch off ignition on vehicles with power button. Turn the steering wheel until the steering wheel lock is felt to engage.

For vehicles with automatic transmission, the key can only be removed when the selector lever is in position **P**.

- Lock the vehicle with  on the radio remote control.

Activate the anti-theft alarm system ⇨ 37.

- The engine cooling fans may run after the engine has been switched off ⇨ 222.

### Caution

After running at high engine speeds or with high engine loads, operate the engine briefly at a low load or run in neutral for approx. 30 seconds before switching off, in order to protect the turbocharger.

Keys, locks ⇨ 21.

Laying-up the vehicle for a long period of time ⇨ 221.

## Keys, doors and windows

|                                 |           |
|---------------------------------|-----------|
| <b>Keys, locks</b> .....        | <b>21</b> |
| Keys .....                      | 21        |
| Radio remote control .....      | 22        |
| Electronic key system .....     | 23        |
| Memorised settings .....        | 25        |
| Central locking system .....    | 26        |
| Automatic locking .....         | 30        |
| Child locks .....               | 31        |
| <b>Doors</b> .....              | <b>32</b> |
| Load compartment .....          | 32        |
| <b>Vehicle security</b> .....   | <b>37</b> |
| Anti-theft locking system ..... | 37        |
| Anti-theft alarm system .....   | 37        |
| Immobiliser .....               | 40        |
| <b>Exterior mirrors</b> .....   | <b>40</b> |
| Convex shape .....              | 40        |
| Electric adjustment .....       | 40        |
| Folding mirrors .....           | 41        |
| Heated mirrors .....            | 41        |
| <b>Interior mirrors</b> .....   | <b>42</b> |
| Manual anti-dazzle .....        | 42        |
| Automatic anti-dazzle .....     | 42        |

|                          |           |
|--------------------------|-----------|
| <b>Windows</b> .....     | <b>42</b> |
| Windscreen .....         | 42        |
| Manual windows .....     | 43        |
| Power windows .....      | 43        |
| Heated rear window ..... | 45        |
| Heated windscreen .....  | 45        |
| Sun visors .....         | 45        |
| <b>Roof</b> .....        | <b>46</b> |
| Sunroof .....            | 46        |

## Keys, locks

### Keys

#### Caution

Do not attach heavy or bulky items to the ignition key.

### Replacement keys

The key number is specified on a detachable tag.

The key number must be quoted when ordering replacement keys as it is a component of the immobiliser system.

Locks ⇨ 265.

Central locking ⇨ 26.

Starting the engine ⇨ 153.

Radio remote control ⇨ 22.

Electronic key ⇨ 23.

The code number of the adapter for the locking wheel nuts is specified on a card. It must be quoted when ordering a replacement adapter.

Wheel changing ⇨ 257.

**Key with foldaway key section**

Press button to extend. To fold the key, first press the button.

**Radio remote control**

Enables operation of the following functions via the use of the remote control buttons:

- central locking system ⇨ 26
- anti-theft locking system ⇨ 37
- anti-theft alarm system ⇨ 37
- power windows ⇨ 43
- sunroof ⇨ 46

The remote control has a range of up to 100 m, but may also be much less due to external influences. The hazard warning flashers confirm operation.

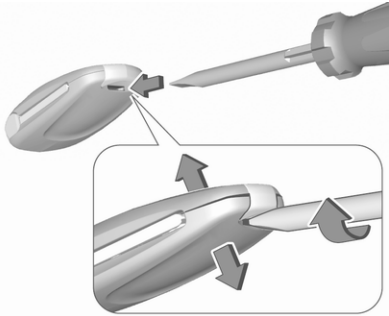
Handle with care, protect from moisture and high temperatures and avoid unnecessary operation.

**Replacing battery in radio remote control**

Replace the battery as soon as the range reduces.



Batteries do not belong in household waste. They must be disposed of at an appropriate recycling collection point.



1. Insert flat screwdriver into the slot and separate the back cover from the remote control by slightly turning the screwdriver.
2. Remove and replace battery. Use CR 2032 or equivalent battery. Pay attention to the installation position.
3. Insert the back cover in the area of the key blade, fold down and close.

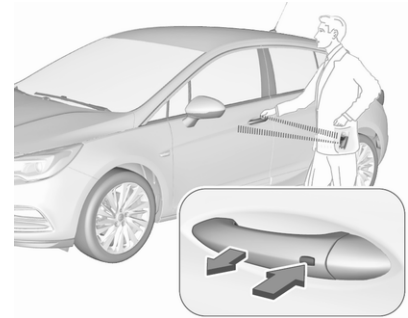
## Fault

If the central locking system cannot be operated with the radio remote control, the cause may be one of the following:

- Fault in radio remote control.
- The range is exceeded.
- The battery voltage is too low.
- Frequent, repeated operation of the radio remote control while not in range, which will require re-synchronisation.
- Overload of the central locking system by operating at frequent intervals, the power supply is interrupted for a short time.
- Interference from higher-power radio waves from other sources.

Manual unlocking ⇨ 26.

## Electronic key system



Enables a keyless operation of the following functions:

- central locking system ⇨ 26
- power tailgate ⇨ 32
- ignition switching on and starting the engine ⇨ 153

The electronic key simply needs to be on the driver's person.

Depending on version, the electronic key is equipped with a motion sensor for security reasons. If the electronic key has not been moved for a certain time, starting of the vehicle is not possible. When trying to start the

vehicle, a corresponding message appears in the Driver Information Centre. Move the electronic key and try to start the vehicle again.

Additionally, the electronic key includes the functionality of the radio remote control ↻ 22.



Handle with care, protect from moisture and high temperatures and avoid unnecessary operation.

#### Note



Do not put the electronic key into the load compartment or in front of the Info Display.

### Activation and deactivation keyless unlocking

If equipped, keyless unlocking of the doors and the tailgate can be activated or deactivated.

To deactivate the keyless unlocking, press and hold   at the same time on the electronic key for approx. 3 seconds. The turn lights will indicate the deactivation by flashing four times. Using any exterior door handle to unlock the doors or the tailgate will indicate the deactivation by the turn

lights flashing four times quickly. If keyless unlocking is deactivated, deactivate the alarm system before starting the vehicle.

To activate the keyless unlocking, press and hold   at the same time on the electronic key for approx. 3 seconds. The turn lights will indicate the activation by flashing quickly twice.

### Replacing battery in electronic key

Replace the battery as soon as the system no longer operates properly or the range is reduced. The need for battery replacement is indicated by a message in the Driver Information Centre ↻ 120.



Batteries do not belong in household waste. They must be disposed of at an appropriate recycling collection point.

To replace:



1. Press button at the back of the electronic key unit and extract the key blade from the housing.



2. Insert the key blade again for approx. 6 mm and turn the key to open the housing. Further insertion of the key blade can damage the housing.
3. Remove and replace battery. Use CR 2032 or equivalent battery. Pay attention to the installation position.
4. Close the housing and insert key blade.

### Electronic key synchronisation

The electronic key synchronises itself automatically during every starting procedure.

### Fault

If the central locking cannot be operated or the engine cannot be started, the cause may be one of the following:

- Fault in electronic key.
- Electronic key is out of reception range.
- The battery voltage is too low.
- Overload of the central locking system by operating at frequent intervals, the power supply is interrupted for a short time.
- Interference from higher-power radio waves from other sources.

To rectify the cause of the fault, change the position of the electronic key.

Manual unlocking ⇨ 26.

### Memorised settings

Whenever the ignition is switched off, some functions of the following settings may be automatically memorised by the remote control unit or the electronic key:

- automatic climate control
- lighting
- Infotainment system
- central locking system
- comfort settings

The saved settings are automatically used the next time the ignition is switched on with the memorised key of the remote control unit ⇨ 150 or electronic key ⇨ 23.

A precondition is that **Personalisation by Driver** is activated in the personal settings of the Info Display. This must be set for each remote control unit or electronic key which is used. The status change is available only after locking and unlocking the vehicle.

The assigned memory position of the power seat is automatically recalled when switching on ignition and **Auto Memory Recall** is activated in the Info Display for the memorised remote control or electronic key.

Power seat ⇨ 52.

Vehicle personalisation ⇨ 122.

## Central locking system

Unlocks and locks doors, load compartment and fuel filler flap.

A pull on an interior door handle unlocks the respective door. Pulling the handle once more opens the door.

### Note

In the event of an accident in which airbags or belt pretensioners are deployed, the vehicle is automatically unlocked.

### Note

A short time after unlocking with the remote control the doors are locked automatically if no door has been opened. A precondition is that the setting is activated in the vehicle personalisation  $\rightarrow$  122.




## Remote control operation

### Unlocking



Press .

Unlocking mode can be set in the vehicle personalisation menu in the Info Display. Two settings are selectable:

- All doors, load compartment and fuel filler flap will be unlocked by pressing  once.
- Only the driver's door and fuel filler flap will be unlocked by pressing  once. To unlock all doors and load compartment, press  twice.

Select the relevant setting in **Settings**  $\rightarrow$  **Vehicle** in the Info Display.

Info Display  $\rightarrow$  119.

Vehicle personalisation  $\rightarrow$  122.

The setting can be saved for the remote control being used.  
Memorised settings  $\rightarrow$  25.

Unlocking and opening the tailgate  $\rightarrow$  32.

### Locking

Close doors, load compartment and fuel filler flap.



Press .

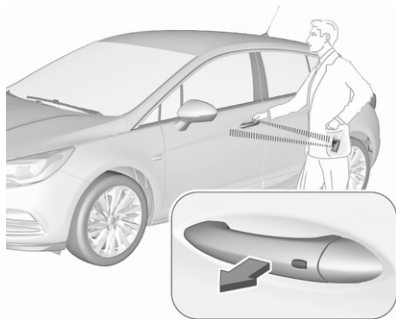


If the driver's door is not closed properly, the central locking system will not work.

### Confirmation

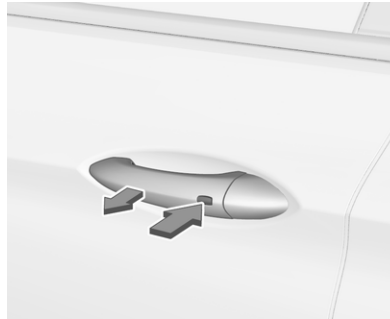
Operation of the central locking system is confirmed by the hazard warning flashers. A precondition is that the setting is activated in the vehicle personalisation ↻ 122.

### Electronic key system operation



The electronic key must be outside the vehicle, within a range of approx. 1 m of the relevant door side.

### Unlocking



Press the button on a front door handle and pull the handle.

Unlocking mode can be set in the vehicle personalisation menu in the Info Display. Two settings are selectable:

- All doors, load compartment and fuel filler flap will be unlocked by pressing the button on any exterior handle once.
- Only the driver's door and fuel filler flap will be unlocked by pressing the button on the driver's door exterior handle

once. To unlock all doors and load compartment, press button twice.

The setting can be changed in the menu **Settings** in the Info Display.

Vehicle personalisation ↻ 122.

### Locking



Press the button on a front door handle.

All doors, load compartment and fuel filler flap will be locked.

The system locks if any of the following occurs:

- It has been more than 5 seconds since unlocking.
- The button on an exterior handle has been pressed twice within 3 seconds to unlock the vehicle.
- Any door has been opened and all doors are now closed.

If the driver's door is not closed properly, the electronic key remains in the vehicle or the ignition is not off, locking will not be permitted.

If there have been two or more electronic keys in the vehicle and the ignition was on once, the doors will be locked even if just one electronic key is taken out of the vehicle.

### Unlocking and opening the tailgate

The tailgate can be unlocked and opened hands-free via moving the foot below the rear bumper or by pushing the tailgate button under the brand emblem when the electronic key is in range. The doors remain locked.

Load compartment ⇨ 32.

### Operation with buttons on the electronic key



The central locking system can also be operated with the buttons on the electronic key.

Press to unlock.

Press to lock.

Press twice to unlock and open only the power tailgate. To prevent unintended opening of the tailgate, must be pressed longer than during locking or unlocking.

Remote control operation ⇨ 26.

### Passive locking

Automatic locking ⇨ 30.

### Confirmation

Operation of central locking system is confirmed by the hazard warning flashers. A precondition is that the setting is activated in the vehicle personalisation ⇨ 122.

### Central locking buttons

Locks or unlocks all doors, the load compartment and fuel filler flap from the passenger compartment via a switch in the driver's door panel.



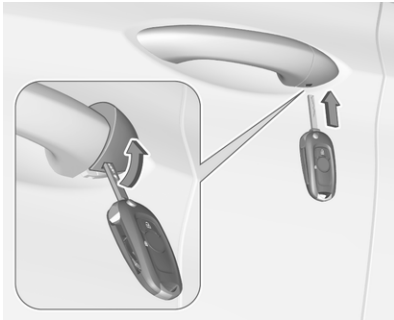
Press to lock.

Press to unlock.

### Operation with the key in case of a central locking system fault

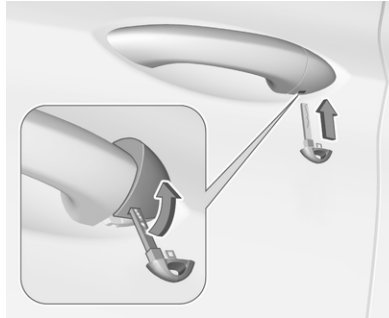
In case of a fault, e.g. vehicle battery or remote control / electronic key battery is discharged, the driver's door can be locked or unlocked with the mechanical key.

The lock cylinder in the driver's door is covered by a cap.



**Remote control:** to remove the cap, insert the key into the recess at the bottom of the cap and swivel the key upward.

Keys ⇨ 21.




**Electronic key:** to remove the cap, press button at the back and extract the key blade from the housing. Insert the key into the recess at the bottom of the cap and swivel the key upward.

Electronic key system ⇨ 23.

### Manual unlocking




Manually unlock the driver's door by inserting and turning the key in the lock cylinder.

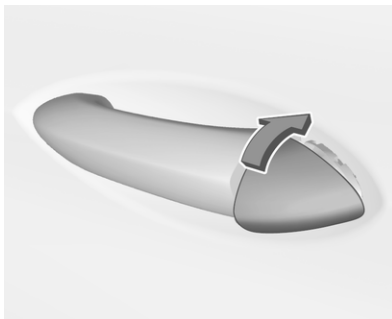
The other doors can be opened by pulling the interior handle twice or by pressing  in the driver's door panel. The load compartment and fuel filler flap will possibly not be unlocked.

By switching on the ignition, the anti-theft locking system is deactivated.

### Manual locking



Push inside locking knob of all doors except driver's door or press  in the driver's door panel. Then close the driver's door and lock it from the outside by turning the key in the lock cylinder. The fuel filler flap and tailgate are possibly not locked.



After locking, cover the lock cylinder with the cap: insert the cap with the lower side in the recesses, swivel and push the cap until it engages at the upper side.

### Automatic locking

#### Automatic locking after driving off

This security feature can be configured to automatically lock all doors, load compartment and fuel filler flap after driving off and exceeding a certain speed.

When at a standstill after driving, the vehicle will be unlocked automatically as soon as the key is removed from the ignition switch, or with electronic key system when the ignition is switched off.

Activation or deactivation of automatic locking can be set in the menu **Settings ▶ Vehicle** in the Info Display.

Info Display ⇨ 119.

Vehicle personalisation ⇨ 122.

The setting can be saved for the remote control or electronic key being used ⇨ 25.

### Automatic relock after unlocking

This feature can be configured to automatically lock all doors, load compartment and fuel filler flap a short time after unlocking with the remote control or electronic key, provided no door has been opened.

Activation or deactivation of automatic relock can be set in the menu **Settings ▶ Vehicle** in the Info Display.

Info Display ⇨ 119.

Vehicle personalisation ⇨ 122.

The setting can be saved for the remote control or electronic key being used ⇨ 25.



### Passive locking

On vehicles with electronic key system, this feature locks the vehicle automatically after several seconds if an electronic key has been recognised previously inside the vehicle, all doors have then been closed and the electronic key does not remain within the vehicle.

If the electronic key remains in the vehicle or the ignition is not off, passive locking will not be permitted.

If there have been two or more electronic keys in the vehicle and the ignition was on once, the feature locks the vehicle if just one electronic key is taken out of the vehicle.

To prevent passive locking of the vehicle e.g. when refuelling or if passengers remain in the vehicle, the system must be disabled.

To disable the system, press the central locking button  for a few seconds while one door is open. An acoustic signal sounds three times to confirm deactivation. The function remains disabled until the central locking button  is pressed or the ignition is switched on.

Activation or deactivation of passive locking can be set in the menu **Settings ▶ Vehicle** in the Info Display.

Info Display ⇨ 119.

Vehicle personalisation ⇨ 122.

The setting can be saved for the electronic key being used ⇨ 25.

### Child locks



#### Warning

Use the child locks whenever children are occupying the rear seats.

Move the pin in the rear door to the front. The door cannot be opened from the inside.

To deactivate, move the pin to the rear position.

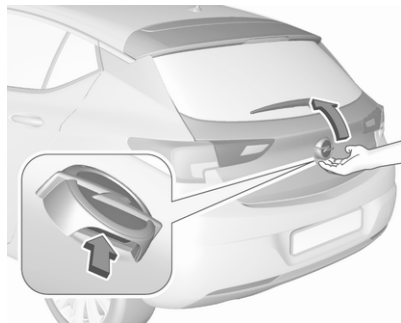
## Doors

### Load compartment

#### Tailgate

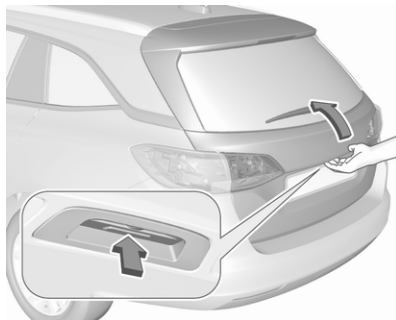
##### Opening

##### 5-door Hatchback



After unlocking, push the tailgate button under the brand emblem and open the tailgate.

##### Sports Tourer



After unlocking, push the tailgate button under the tailgate moulding and open the tailgate manually.

Central locking system ⇨ 26.

##### Closing



Use one of the interior handles.

Do not push the tailgate button whilst closing as this will unlock the tailgate again.

Central locking system ⇨ 26.



## Power tailgate



### ⚠ Warning

Take care when operating the power tailgate. Risk of injury, particularly to children.

Keep a close watch on the movable tailgate when operating. Ensure that nothing becomes trapped during operating and no one is standing within the moving area.

The power tailgate can be operated by:

- Pressing  twice on the electronic key. To prevent unintended opening of the tailgate,  must be pressed longer than during locking or unlocking.
- Hands-free operation with motion sensor below the rear bumper.

- The tailgate button under the exterior tailgate moulding and  in the open tailgate.
- The switch  on the inside of the driver's door.

On vehicles with automatic transmission, the tailgate can only be operated when the vehicle is stationary and with selector lever in **P**.

The turn lights flash and a chime sounds when the power tailgate is operating.

### Note

Operating the power tailgate does not operate the central locking system. To open the tailgate with the button on the electronic key, or with the tailgate button or via hands-free operation, it is not necessary to unlock the vehicle. A precondition is that the electronic key is outside the vehicle, within a range of approx. 1 m of the tailgate.



Do not leave the electronic key in the load compartment.

Lock the vehicle after closing if it was unlocked previously.

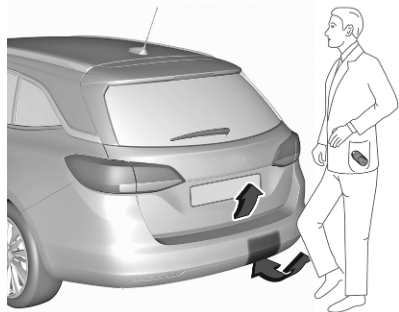
Central locking system ⇨ 26.

## Operation with the electronic key



Press  twice to open or close the tailgate. To prevent unintended opening of the tailgate,  must be pressed longer than during locking or unlocking.

### Hands-free operation with motion sensor below the rear bumper



To open or close the tailgate, move the foot below the rear bumper back and forth in the area shown in the illustration. If equipped with parking assist, the area is recognisable below the sensor shown. Do not hold the foot longer or move too slow below the bumper. The electronic key must be outside the vehicle, within a range of approx. 1 m of the tailgate.

### Danger


Do not touch any vehicle parts below the vehicle during hands-free operation. There is a risk of injury from hot engine parts.

### Operation with the tailgate button under the exterior tailgate moulding



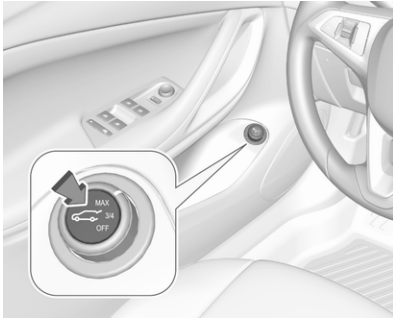
To open the tailgate, press the tailgate button under the tailgate moulding until the tailgate starts to move. If the vehicle is locked, the electronic key must be outside the vehicle, within a range of approx. 1 m of the tailgate.




To close, press  in the open tailgate until the tailgate starts to move.




### Operation with the switch on the inside of the driver's door





Press  on the inside of the driver's door until the tailgate starts to open or close.

### Stop or change direction of movement


To stop movement of the tailgate immediately:

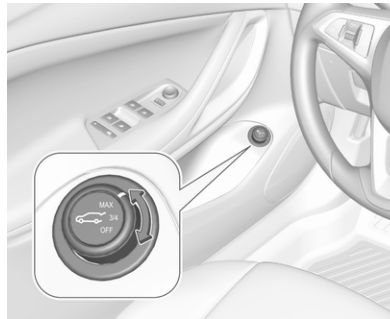
- press  once on the electronic key, or
- press the tailgate button under the exterior tailgate moulding, or

- press  on the open tailgate, or
- press  on the inside of the driver's door.

Pressing one of the switches again will reverse the direction of movement.

### Operation modes

The power tailgate has three modes of operation, which are controlled by the switch  in the driver's door. To change the mode, turn the switch:




- Normal mode **MAX**: Power tailgate opens to full height.
- Intermediate mode **3/4**: Power tailgate opens to a reduced height that can be adjusted.
- Mode **Off**: Tailgate can only be operated manually.

### Adjust reduced opening height in intermediate mode

1. Turn operation mode switch to **3/4**.
2. Open power tailgate with any operation switch.
3. Stop movement at the desired height by pressing any operation switch. If required, manually move the stopped tailgate to the desired position.



4. Press and hold the button  on the inside of the open tailgate for 3 seconds.

#### Note

Adjusting opening height should be programmed at ground level.

A chime sound indicates the new setting and the turn lights will flash. The reduced height can only set at an opening angle of above 30°.

When turning the adjuster wheel in the driver's door to intermediate mode **3/4**, the power tailgate will stop opening at the newly set position.

The tailgate can only be held open if a minimum height is exceeded (minimum opening angle from 30°). The opening height cannot be programmed below that height.

#### Safety function


If the power tailgate encounters an obstacle during opening or closing, the direction of movement will automatically be reversed slightly. Multiple obstacles in one power cycle will deactivate the function. In this case, close or open the tailgate manually.

The power tailgate has pinch sensors on the side edges. If the sensors detect obstacles between tailgate and chassis, the tailgate will open, until it is activated again or closed manually.

The safety function is indicated by a warning chime.

Remove all obstacles before resuming normal power operation.

If the vehicle is equipped with factory-fitted towing equipment and a trailer is electrically connected, the power tailgate can only be opened with the

tailgate button or closed with  in the open tailgate. Ensure that there are no obstacles in the moving area.

#### Overload

If the power tailgate is repeatedly operated at short intervals, the function is disabled for some time. Move tailgate manually into end position to reset the system.

#### General hints for operating tailgate

##### Danger

Do not drive with the tailgate open or ajar, e.g. when transporting bulky objects, since toxic exhaust gases, which cannot be seen or smelled, could enter the vehicle. This can cause unconsciousness and even death.

##### Caution

Before opening the tailgate, check overhead obstructions, e.g. a garage door, to avoid damage to

the tailgate. Always check the moving area above and behind the tailgate.

**Note**

The installation of certain heavy accessories onto the tailgate may affect its ability to remain open.

**Note**

The operation of the power tailgate is disabled under low vehicle battery conditions. In this case, the tailgate may not even be manually operable.

**Note**

With the power tailgate disabled and all doors unlocked, the tailgate can only be operated manually. In this event, manually closing the tailgate requires significantly greater force.

**Note**

At low outside temperatures the tailgate may not open fully by itself. In this event, lift the tailgate manually to its normal end position.

## Vehicle security

### Anti-theft locking system

**⚠ Warning**

Do not use the system if there are people in the vehicle! The doors cannot be unlocked from the inside.

The system deadlocks all the doors. All doors must be closed otherwise the system cannot be activated.

Unlocking the vehicle disables the mechanical anti-theft locking system. This is not possible with the central locking button.

### Activating



Press  on the radio remote control twice within 5 seconds.

### Anti-theft alarm system

The anti-theft alarm system is combined with the anti-theft locking system.


It monitors:

- doors, tailgate, bonnet
- passenger compartment including adjoining load compartment


- vehicle inclination, e.g. if it is raised
- ignition

### Activation

All doors must be closed and the electronic key of the electronic key system must not remain in the vehicle. Otherwise the system cannot be activated.

- Radio remote control: activated 30 seconds after locking the vehicle by pressing  once.
- Electronic key system: activated 30 seconds after locking the vehicle by pressing the button on any exterior door handle.



- Radio remote control or electronic key: directly by pressing  twice within 5 seconds.
- Electronic key system with passive locking enabled: briefly activated after passive locking occurs.



### Note

Changes to the vehicle interior such as the use of seat covers, and open windows or sunroof, could impair the function of passenger compartment monitoring.

### Activation without monitoring of passenger compartment and vehicle inclination



Switch off the monitoring of passenger compartment and vehicle inclination when animals are being left in the vehicle, because of high volume ultrasonic signals or movements triggering the alarm. Also switch off when the vehicle is on a ferry or train.

1. Close tailgate, bonnet, windows and sunroof.
2. Press . LED in the button  illuminates for a maximum of 10 minutes.

3. Close doors.
4. Activate the anti-theft alarm system.

Status message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

### Status LED



Status LED is integrated in the sensor on top of the instrument panel.

Status during the first 30 seconds of anti-theft alarm system activation:


LED illuminates : test, arming delay  
LED flashes : doors, tailgate or bonnet not completely closed, or system fault

Status after system is armed:

LED flashes : system is armed slowly

Seek the assistance of a workshop in the event of faults.

### Deactivation

Radio remote control: Unlocking the vehicle by pressing  deactivates the anti-theft alarm system.




Electronic key system: Unlocking the vehicle by pressing the button on any exterior door handle deactivates the anti-theft alarm system.

The electronic key must be outside the vehicle, within a range of approx. 1 m of the relevant door side.

The system is not deactivated by unlocking the driver's door with the key or with the central locking button in the passenger compartment.

### Alarm

When triggered, the alarm horn sounds and the hazard warning lights flash simultaneously. The number and duration of alarm signals are stipulated by legislation.

The anti-theft alarm system can be deactivated by pressing , by pressing the switch on the door handle with electronic key system or switching on the ignition.

A triggered alarm, which has not been interrupted by the driver, will be indicated by the hazard warning lights. They will flash quickly three times the next time the vehicle is unlocked with the radio remote control. Additionally a warning message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre after switching on the ignition.


Vehicle messages ⇨ 120.


If the vehicle's battery is to be disconnected (e.g. for maintenance work), the alarm siren must be deactivated as follows: switch the ignition on then off, then disconnect the vehicle's battery within 15 seconds.

## Immobiliser

The system is part of the ignition switch and checks whether the vehicle is allowed to be started with the key being used.

The immobiliser is activated automatically after the key has been removed from the ignition switch.

If the control indicator  flashes when the ignition is on, there is a fault in the system; the engine cannot be started. Switch off the ignition and repeat the start attempt.

If the control indicator  continues flashing, attempt to start the engine using the spare key and seek the assistance of a workshop.

### Note

Radio Frequency Identification (RFID) tags may cause interference with the key. Do not have it placed near the key when starting the vehicle.

### Note

The immobiliser does not lock the doors. Always lock the vehicle after leaving it ⇨ 26.

Switch on the anti-theft alarm system ⇨ 37.

Control indicator  ⇨ 111.

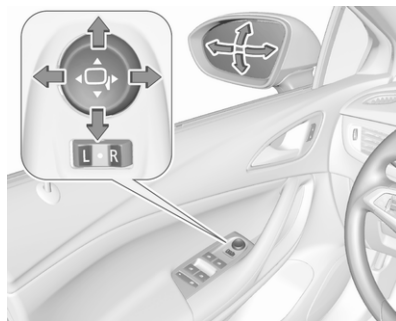
## Exterior mirrors

### Convex shape

The shape of the mirror makes objects appear smaller, which will affect the ability to estimate distances.

Side blind spot alert ⇨ 201.

### Electric adjustment



Select the relevant exterior mirror by switching the control to left (L) or right (R). Then swivel the control to adjust the mirror.

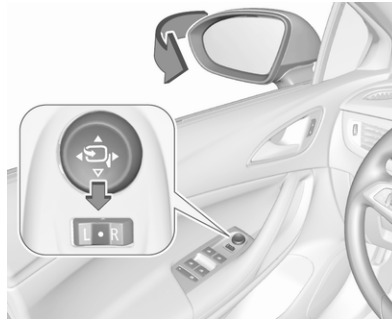
In position ● no mirror is selected.

## Folding mirrors



For pedestrian safety, the exterior mirrors will swing out of their normal mounting position if they are struck with sufficient force. Reposition the mirror by applying slight pressure to the mirror housing.

## Electric folding



Switch control to ●, then push the control ▽ down. Both exterior mirrors will fold.

Push the control down again - both exterior mirrors return to their original position.

If an electrically folded mirror is manually extended, pressing down the control will only electrically extend the other mirror.

## Heated mirrors



Operated by pressing .

Heating works with the engine running and is switched off automatically after a short time.

## Interior mirrors

### Manual anti-dazzle



To reduce dazzle, adjust the lever on the underside of the mirror housing.

### Automatic anti-dazzle



Dazzle from following vehicles is automatically reduced, when driving in the dark.

## Windows

### Windscreen

#### Windscreen stickers

Do not attach stickers such as toll road stickers or similar on the windscreen in the area of the interior mirror. Otherwise the detection zone of the sensor and the view area of the camera in the mirror housing could be restricted.

#### Windscreen replacement

| Caution   |
|---|
| If the vehicle has a front-looking camera sensor for the driver assistance systems, it is very important that any windscreen replacement is performed accurately according to Opel specifications. Otherwise, these systems may not work properly and there is a risk of unexpected behaviour and / or messages from these systems. |



## Manual windows

The door windows can be opened or closed with the window cranks.

## Power windows

### Warning

Take care when operating the power windows. Risk of injury, particularly to children.

If there are children on the rear seats, switch on the child safety system for the power windows.

Keep a close watch on the windows when closing them. Ensure that nothing becomes trapped in them as they move.

Switch on ignition to operate power windows.

Retained power off ⇨ 153.



Operate the switch for the respective window by pushing to open or pulling to close.

Pushing or pulling gently to the first detent: window moves up or down as long as the switch is operated.

Pushing or pulling firmly to the second detent then releasing: window moves up or down automatically with safety function enabled. To stop movement, operate the switch once more in the same direction.

## Safety function

If the window glass encounters resistance above the middle of the window during automatic closing, it is immediately stopped and opened again.

## Override safety function

In the event of closing difficulties due to frost or the like, switch on the ignition, then pull the switch to the first detent and hold. The window moves up without safety function enabled. To stop movement, release the switch.

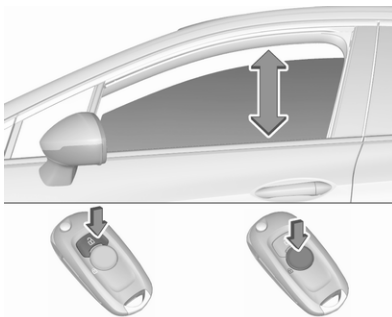
### Child safety system for rear windows



Press to deactivate rear door power windows; the LED illuminates. To activate, press again.

### Operating windows from outside

The windows can be operated remotely from outside the vehicle.



Press and hold to open windows.

Press and hold to close windows.

Release button to stop window movement.

If the windows are fully opened or closed, the hazard warning lights will flash twice.

### Overload

If the windows are repeatedly operated within short intervals, the window operation is disabled for some time.

### Initialising the power windows

If the windows cannot be closed automatically (e.g. after disconnecting the vehicle battery), a warning message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.


Vehicle messages ⇨ 120.

Activate the window electronics as follows:

1. Close doors.
2. Switch on ignition.
3. Pull switch until the window is closed and keep pulling for additional two seconds.
4. Push switch until the window is completely open and keep pushing for additional two seconds.
5. Repeat for each window.


## Heated rear window




Operated by pressing .  
Heating works with the engine running and is switched off automatically after a short time.

## Heated windscreen



Operated by pressing . LED in button illuminates.

Heating works with the engine running and is switched off automatically after a short time.

Pressing  once more during the same ignition cycle allows the heating to operate for another three minutes.

## Sun visors

The sun visors can be folded down or swivelled to the side to prevent dazzling.

The covers of the mirrors should be closed when driving.

A ticket holder is located on the backside of the sun visor.

## Roof

### Sunroof

#### ⚠ Warning



Take care when operating the sunroof. Risk of injury, particularly to children.



Keep a close watch on the movable parts when operating them. Ensure that nothing becomes trapped in them as they move.

Switch on ignition to operate the sunroof.





#### Open or close

Press  or  gently to the first detent: sunroof is opened or closed as long as the switch is operated.

Press  or  firmly to the second detent then release: the sunroof is opened or closed automatically. During closing the safety function is enabled. To stop movement, operate the switch once more.

#### Raise or close

Press  or : sunroof is raised or closed automatically. During closing the safety function is enabled.

#### Sunblind

The sunblind is manually operated.


Close or open the sunblind by sliding. When the sunroof is open, the sunblind is always open.

#### General hints

##### Safety function

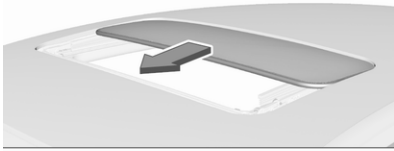
If the sunroof encounters resistance during automatic closing, it is immediately stopped and opened again.


##### Override safety function

In the event of closing difficulties, e.g. due to frost, hold the switch  pressed to the second detent. The sunroof closes with safety function disabled. To stop movement, release the switch.

##### Closing sunroof from outside

The sunroof can be closed remotely from outside the vehicle.



Press and hold  to close the sunroof.  
Release the button to stop the movement.

**Initialising after a power failure**

After a power failure, it may only be possible to operate the sunroof to a limited extent. Have the system initialised by your workshop.

## Seats, restraints

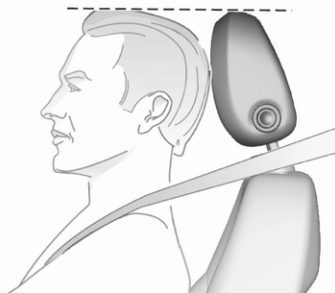
|  |           |
|--|-----------|
| <b>Head restraints</b> .....                 | <b>48</b> |
| <b>Front seats</b> .....                     | <b>49</b> |
| Seat position .....                          | 49        |
| Manual seat adjustment .....                 | 50        |
| Power seat adjustment .....                  | 52        |
| Armrest .....                                | 55        |
| Heating .....                                | 56        |
| Ventilating .....                            | 56        |
| Massage .....                                | 57        |
| <b>Rear seats</b> .....                      | <b>57</b> |
| Armrest .....                                | 57        |
| Heating .....                                | 58        |
| <b>Seat belts</b> .....                      | <b>58</b> |
| Three-point seat belt .....                  | 59        |
| <b>Airbag system</b> .....                   | <b>60</b> |
| Front airbag system .....                    | 64        |
| Side airbag system .....                     | 64        |
| Curtain airbag system .....                  | 65        |
| Airbag deactivation .....                    | 65        |
| <b>Child restraints</b> .....                | <b>67</b> |
| Child restraint systems .....                | 67        |
| Child restraint installation locations ..... | 69        |

## Head restraints

### Position

#### ⚠ Warning

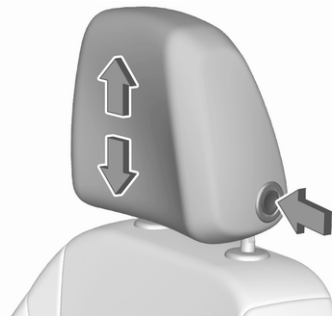
Only drive with the head restraint set to the proper position.



The upper edge of the head restraint should be at upper head level. If this is not possible for extremely tall people, set to highest position, and set to lowest position for small people.

## Adjustment

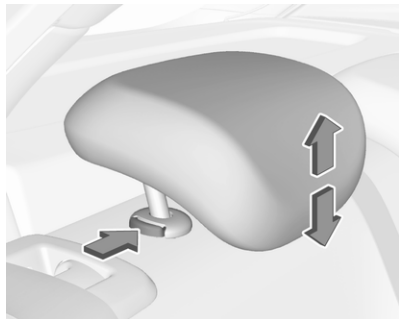
### Head restraints on front seats



### Height adjustment

Press release button, adjust height, engage.

## Head restraints on rear seats



### Height adjustment

Pull the head restraint upwards or press the catch to release and push the head restraint downwards.

### Removal of rear head restraints

E.g. for load compartment extension  
⇨ 73.



Press both catches, pull the head restraint upwards and remove.

## Front seats

### Seat position

#### Warning

Only drive with the seat correctly adjusted.

#### Danger

Do not sit closer than 25 cm to the steering wheel, to permit safe airbag deployment.

#### Warning

Never adjust seats while driving as they could move uncontrollably.

#### Warning

Never store any objects under the seats.



- Sit with buttocks as far back against the backrest as possible. Adjust the distance between the seat and the pedals so that legs are slightly angled when fully pressing the pedals. Slide the front passenger seat as far back as possible.
- Set seat height high enough to have a clear field of vision on all sides and of all display instruments. There should be at least one hand of clearance between head and the roof frame. Your thighs should rest lightly on the seat without pressing into it.

- Sit with shoulders as far back against the backrest as possible. Set the backrest rake so that it is possible to easily reach the steering wheel with arms slightly bent. Maintain contact between shoulders and the backrest when turning the steering wheel. Do not angle the backrest too far back. We recommend a maximum rake of approx. 25°.
- Adjust seat and steering wheel in a way that the wrist rests on top of the steering wheel while the arm is fully extended and shoulders on the backrest.
- Adjust the steering wheel ↻ 91.
- Adjust the head restraint ↻ 48.
- Adjust the thigh support so that there is a space approx. two fingers wide between the edge of the seat and the hollow of the knee.
- Adjust the lumbar support so that it supports the natural shape of the spine.

## Manual seat adjustment

Drive only with engaged seats and backrests.

### Longitudinal adjustment

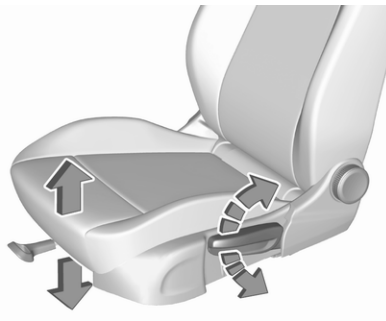


Pull handle, slide seat, release handle. Try to move the seat back and forth to ensure that the seat is locked in place.



**Backrest inclination**

Turn handwheel. Do not lean on backrest when adjusting.

**Seat height**

Lever pumping motion

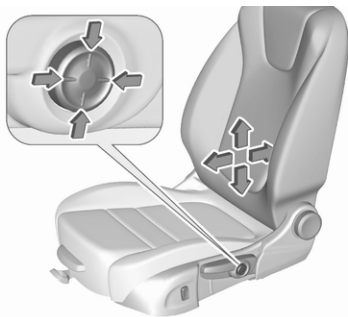
up : seat higher  
down : seat lower

**Seat inclination**

Press switch

top : front end higher  
bottom : front end lower

### Lumbar support

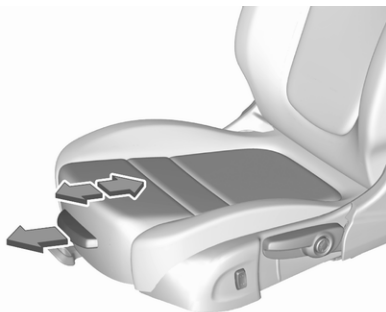


Adjust lumbar support using the four-way switch to suit personal requirements.

Moving support up and down: push switch up or down.

Increasing and decreasing support: push switch forwards or backwards.

### Adjustable thigh support



Pull the lever and slide the thigh support.

### Power seat adjustment

#### **Warning**

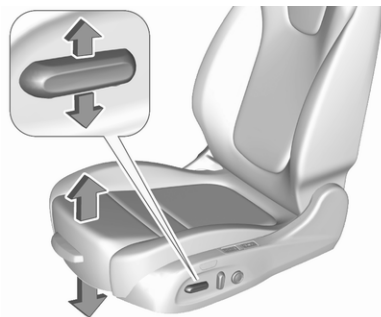
Care must be taken when operating the power seats. There is a risk of injury, particularly for children. Objects could become trapped.

Keep a close watch on the seats when adjusting them. Vehicle passengers should be informed accordingly.

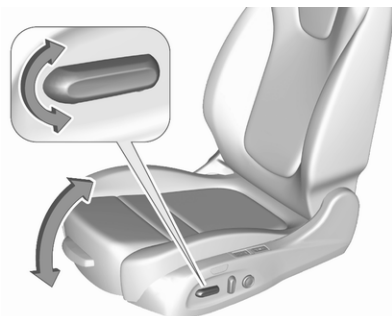
### Longitudinal adjustment



Move switch forwards / backwards.

**Seat height**

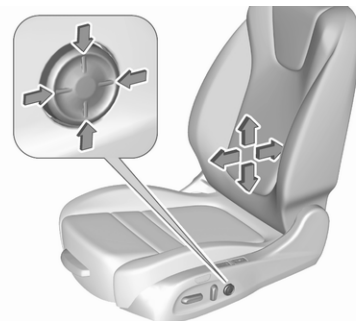
Move switch upwards / downwards.

**Seat inclination**

Tilt front of switch upwards / downwards.

**Backrest inclination**

Tilt switch forwards / backwards.

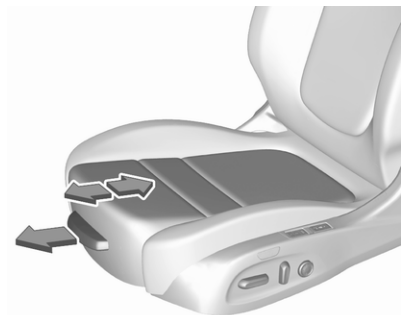
**Lumbar support**

Adjust lumbar support using the four-way switch to suit personal requirements.

Moving support up and down: push switch up or down.

Increasing and decreasing support: push switch forwards or backwards.

### Adjustable thigh support



Pull the lever and slide the thigh support.

### Side bolster



Adjust seat backrest width to suit personal requirements.

Press to reduce backrest width.

Press to increase backrest width.

### Memory function for power seat adjustment

Two different driver's seat settings can be stored.

Memorised settings ⇨ 25.

Vehicle personalisation ⇨ 122.



### Storing memory position

- Adjust driver's seat to desired position.
- Press and hold **MEM** and **1** or **2** simultaneously until a chime sounds.

### Recall of memory positions

Press and hold **1** or **2** until the stored seat position has been reached.

Releasing the button during seat movement cancels the recall.

### Automatic recall of memory positions

Memory positions are assigned to the driver (1 or 2) using the respective key and are automatically recalled when

the ignition is switched on. In addition, a message in the Driver Information Centre indicates the driver number, identified by the used key. If the ignition is switched on more than three subsequent times with the same key, the message will not be displayed again until another key is being used.

To stop recall movement, press one of the memory or power seat controls.

Precondition is that **Personalisation by Driver** and **Auto Memory Recall** is activated in the personal settings of the Info Display.

This function can be activated or deactivated in the vehicle personalisation.

Select the relevant setting in the **Vehicle** menu in the Info Display.

Info Display ⇨ 119.

Vehicle personalisation ⇨ 122.

### Easy exit function

For a convenient exit out of the vehicle, the power driver seat moves rearwards when vehicle is stationary.

To activate the easy exit function:

- set selector lever to position **P** (automatic transmission)
- apply parking brake (manual transmission)
- switch off ignition
- remove key from the ignition switch
- open the driver's door

If the door is already open, switch off ignition to activate easy exit.

To stop movement, press one of the memory or power seat controls.

This function can be activated or deactivated in the vehicle personalisation.

Select the relevant setting in the **Vehicle** menu in the Info Display.

Info Display ⇨ 119.

Vehicle personalisation ⇨ 122.

### Safety function

If the driver's seat encounters resistance during movement, the recall may stop. After removing the obstruction, press and hold the appropriate memory position button

for two seconds. Try recalling the memory position again. If the recall does not operate, consult a workshop.

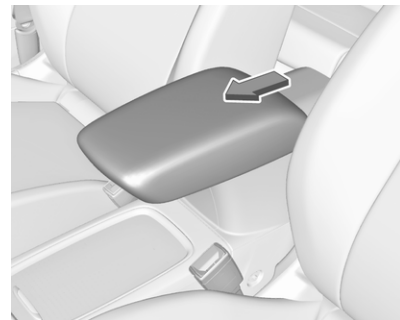
### Overload

If the seat setting is electrically overloaded, the power supply is automatically cut-off for a short time.

### Note

After an accident in which airbags have been deployed, the memory function for each position button will be deactivated.

### Armrest




The armrest can be slid forwards by 10 cm. Under the armrest there is a storage compartment.

Armrest storage ⇨ 72.

## Heating



Adjust heating to the desired setting by pressing  for the respective seat one or more times. The control indicator in the button indicates the setting.

Prolonged use of the highest setting for people with sensitive skin is not recommended.

The seat heating will be reduced automatically from highest level to medium level after 30 minutes.

Seat heating is operational when engine is running and during an Autostop.

Stop-start system ⇨ 155.

### Automatic seat heating

Depending on the equipment, the automatic seat heating can be enabled in the vehicle personalisation menu in the Info Display.

Vehicle personalisation ⇨ 122.

When enabled, the heating of the seats will be activated automatically at vehicle start. The activation is based on several parameters such as vehicle interior temperature, intensity and direction of the sun and temperature setting of the electronic climate control system for the driver and passenger side.

As the vehicle's interior warms up, the seat heating level will be reduced automatically until it finally goes off.


The seat heating level being provided during the automatic operation is shown by heated seat indicator lights.

If the passenger seat is unoccupied, the automatic seat heating feature will not activate the seat heating for that seat.

The seat heating buttons can be pressed at any time to exit the automatic seat heating for the respective seat and control the seat heating manually instead.

## Ventilating




Adjust ventilating to the desired setting by pressing  for the respective seat one or more times. The control indicator in the button indicates the setting.


Ventilated seats are operational when engine is running and during an Autostop.

Stop-start system ⇨ 155.

## Massage



Press  to switch on the back massage function.

To switch off, press  again.

After 10 minutes the massage function is switched off automatically.

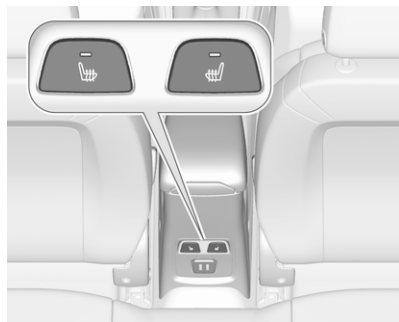
## Rear seats


### Armrest




Fold armrest down.

## Heating



Activate seat heating by pressing  for the respective rear outer seat. Activation is indicated by the LED in the button.

Press  once more to deactivate seat heating.

Prolonged use for people with sensitive skin is not recommended.

Seat heating is operational when engine is running and during an Autostop.

Stop-start system ⇨ 155.

## Seat belts



The seat belts are locked during heavy acceleration or deceleration of the vehicle, holding the occupants in the seat position. Thereby the risk of injury is considerably reduced.

### Warning

Fasten seat belt before each trip.

In the event of an accident, people not wearing seat belts endanger their fellow occupants and themselves.

### Note

Use the belt buckle intended for the respective seat belt when fastening in order to ensure proper functionality.

Seat belts are designed to be used by only one person at a time.

Child restraint system ⇨ 67.




Periodically check all parts of the belt system for damage, soiling and proper functionality.

Have damaged components replaced by a workshop. After an accident, have the belts and triggered belt pretensioners replaced by a workshop.

### Note

Make sure that the belts are not damaged by shoes or sharp-edged objects or trapped. Prevent dirt from getting into the belt retractors.

### Seat belt reminder

Indicates seat belt status for front seats by control indicators  and , or for rear seats by the symbol  in the Driver Information Centre ⇨ 106.



## Belt force limiters


Stress on the body is reduced by the gradual release of the belt during a collision.

## Belt pretensioners

In the event of a head-on, rear-end or side-on collision of a certain severity, the front and rear outer seat belts are tightened.

### Warning

Incorrect handling (e.g. removal or fitting of belts) can trigger the belt pretensioners.

Deployment of the belt pretensioners is indicated by continuous illumination of control indicator  107.

Triggered belt pretensioners must be replaced by a workshop. Belt pretensioners can only be triggered once.

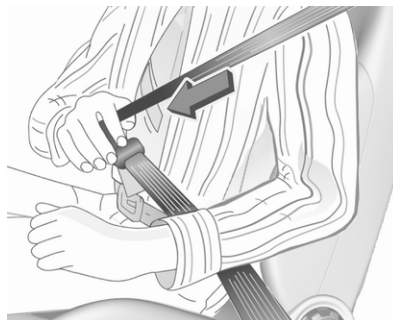
### Note

Do not affix or install accessories or other objects that may interfere with the operation of the belt tensioner.

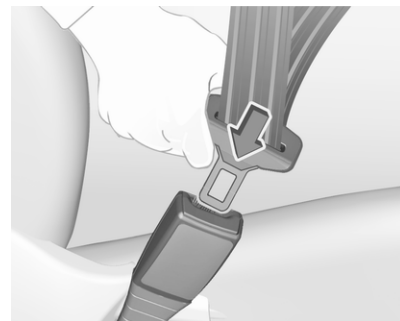
Do not make any modification to belt tensioner components as this will invalidate the vehicle operating permit.

## Three-point seat belt

### Fasten



Withdraw the belt from the retractor, guide it untwisted across the body and insert the latch plate into the correct buckle. Make sure the belt fits tightly to the body while driving.



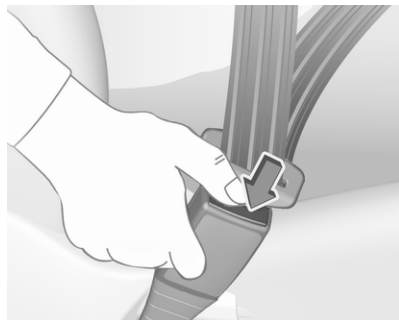
Loose or bulky clothing prevents the belt from fitting snugly. Do not place objects such as handbags or mobile phones between the belt and your body.

### Warning

The belt must not rest against hard or fragile objects in the pockets of your clothing.

Seat belt reminder ,  106.

## Unfasten



To release belt, press red button on belt buckle.

## Using the seat belt while pregnant



### Warning

The lap belt must be positioned as low as possible across the pelvis to prevent pressure on the abdomen.

## Airbag system

The airbag system consists of a number of individual systems depending on the scope of equipment.

When triggered, the airbags inflate within milliseconds. They also deflate so quickly that it is often unnoticeable during the collision.

### Warning

The airbag system deploys in an explosive manner, repairs must be performed by skilled personnel only.

### Warning

Adding accessories that change the vehicle's frame, bumper system, height, front end or side sheet metal, may keep the airbag system from working properly. The operation of the airbag system can also be affected by changing any parts of the front seats, seat belts,

airbag sensing and diagnostic module, steering wheel, instrument panel, inner door seals including the speakers, any of the airbag modules, ceiling or pillar trim, front sensors, side impact sensors or airbag wiring.


### Note

The airbag systems and belt pretensioner control electronics are located in the centre console area. Do not put any magnetic objects in this area.

Do not affix any objects onto the airbag covers and do not cover them with other materials. Have damaged covers replaced by a workshop.

Each airbag is triggered only once. Have deployed airbags replaced by a workshop. Furthermore, it may be necessary to have the steering wheel, the instrument panel, parts of the panelling, the door seals, handles and the seats replaced.

Do not make any modifications to the airbag system as this will invalidate the vehicle operating permit.

Control indicator  for airbag systems  107.

### Child restraint systems on front passenger seat with airbag systems

Warning according to ECE R94.02:



**EN:** NEVER use a rearward-facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it; DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.

**DE:** Nach hinten gerichtete Kindersitze NIEMALS auf einem Sitz verwenden, der durch einen davor befindlichen AKTIVEN AIRBAG

geschützt ist, da dies den TOD oder SCHWERE VERLETZUNGEN DES KINDES zur Folge haben kann.

**FR:** NE JAMAIS utiliser un siège d'enfant orienté vers l'arrière sur un siège protégé par un COUSSIN GONFLABLE ACTIF placé devant lui, sous peine d'infliger des BLESSURES GRAVES, voire MORTELLES à l'ENFANT.

**ES:** NUNCA utilice un sistema de retención infantil orientado hacia atrás en un asiento protegido por un AIRBAG FRONTAL ACTIVO. Peligro de MUERTE o LESIONES GRAVES para el NIÑO.

**RU:** ЗАПРЕЩАЕТСЯ устанавливать детское удерживающее устройство лицом назад на сиденье автомобиля, оборудованном фронтальной подушкой безопасности, если ПОДУШКА НЕ ОТКЛЮЧЕНА! Это может привести к СМЕРТИ или СЕРЬЕЗНЫМ ТРАВМАМ РЕБЕНКА.

**NL:** Gebruik NOOIT een achterwaarts gericht kinderzitje op een stoel met een ACTIEVE AIRBAG ervoor, om DODELIJK of ERNSTIG LETSEL van het KIND te voorkomen.

**DA:** Brug ALDRIG en bagudvendt autostol på et forsæde med AKTIV AIRBAG, BARNET kan komme i LIVSFARE eller komme ALVORLIGT TIL SKADE.

**SV:** Använd ALDRIG en bakåtvänd barnstol på ett säte som skyddas med en framförvarande AKTIV AIRBAG. DÖDSFALL eller ALLVARLIGA SKADOR kan drabba BARNET.

**FI:** ÄLÄ KOSKAAN sijoita taaksepäin suunnattua lasten turvaistuinta istuimelle, jonka edessä on AKTIIVINEN TURVATYYNY, LAPSI VOI KUOLLA tai VAMMAUTUA VAKAVASTI.

**NO:** Bakovervendt barnesikringsutstyr må ALDRI brukes på et sete med AKTIV KOLLISJONSPUTE foran, da det kan føre til at BARNET utsettes for LIVSFARE og fare for ALVORLIGE SKADER.

**PT:** NUNCA use um sistema de retenção para crianças voltado para trás num banco protegido com um AIRBAG ACTIVO na frente do mesmo, poderá ocorrer a PERDA DE VIDA ou FERIMENTOS GRAVES na CRIANÇA.

**IT:** Non usare mai un sistema di sicurezza per bambini rivolto all'indietro su un sedile protetto da AIRBAG ATTIVO di fronte ad esso: pericolo di MORTE o LESIONI GRAVI per il BAMBINO!

**EL:** ΠΟΤΕ μη χρησιμοποιείτε παιδικό κάθισμα ασφαλείας με φορά προς τα πίσω σε κάθισμα που προστατεύεται από μετωπικό ΕΝΕΡΓΟ ΑΕΡΟΣΑΚΟ, διότι το παιδί μπορεί να υποστεί ΘΑΝΑΣΙΜΟ ή ΣΟΒΑΡΟ ΤΡΑΥΜΑΤΙΣΜΟ.

**PL:** NIE WOLNO montować fotelika dziecięcego zwróconego tyłem do kierunku jazdy na fotelu, przed którym znajduje się WŁĄCZONA PODUSZKA POWIETRZNA. Niezastosowanie się do tego zalecenia może być przyczyną ŚMIERCI lub POWAŻNYCH OBRAŻEŃ u DZIECKA.

**TR:** Arkaya bakan bir çocuk emniyet sistemini KESİNLİKLE önünde bir AKTİF HAVA YASTIĞI ile korunmakta olan bir koltukta kullanmayınız. ÇOCUK ÖLEBİLİR veya AĞIR ŞEKİLDE YARALANABİLİR.

**UK:** НЕКОЛИ не використовуйте систему безпеки для дітей, що встановлюється обличчям назад, на сидінні з УВІМКНЕНОЮ ПОДУШКОЮ БЕЗПЕКИ, інакше це може призвести до СМЕРТІ чи СЕРЬОЗНОГО ТРАВМУВАННЯ ДИТИНИ.

**HU:** SOHA ne használjon hátrafelé néző biztonsági gyermekülést előlről AKTÍV LÉGZSÁKKAL védett ülésen, mert a GYERMEK HALÁLÁT vagy KOMOLY SÉRÜLÉSÉT okozhatja.

**HR:** NIKADA nemojte koristiti sustav zadržavanja za djecu okrenut prema natrag na sjedalu s AKTIVNIM ZRAČNIM JASTUKOM ispred njega, to bi moglo dovesti do SMRTI ili OZBILJNJIH OZLJEDA za DIJETE.

**SL:** NIKOLI ne nameščajte otroškega varnostnega sedeža, obrnjenega v nasprotni smeri vožnje, na sedež z

AKTIVNO ČELNO ZRAČNO  
BLAZINO, saj pri tem obstaja  
nevarnost RESNIH ali SMRTNIH  
POŠKODB za OTROKA.

**SR:** NIKADA ne koristiti bezbednosni  
sistem za decu u kome su deca  
okrenuta unazad na sedištu sa  
AKTIVNIM VAZDUŠNIM  
JASTUKOM ispred sedišta zato što  
DETE može da NASTRADA ili da se  
TEŠKO POVREDI.

**МК:** НИКОГАШ не користете детско  
седиште свртено назад на  
седиште заштитено со АКТИВНО  
ВОЗДУШНО ПЕРНИЧЕ пред него,  
затоа што детето може ДА ЗАГИНЕ  
или да биде ТЕШКО ПОВРЕДЕНО.

**BG:** НИКОГА не използвайте  
детска седалка, гледаща назад,  
върху седалка, която е защитена  
чрез АКТИВНА ВЪЗДУШНА  
ВЪЗГЛАВНИЦА пред нея - може да  
се стигне до СМЪРТ или  
СЕРИОЗНО НАРАНЯВАНЕ на  
ДЕТЕТО.

**RO:** Nu utilizați NICIODATĂ un scaun  
pentru copil îndreptat spre partea din  
spate a mașinii pe un scaun protejat  
de un AIRBAG ACTIV în fața sa;

acest lucru poate duce la DECESUL  
sau VĂTĂMAREA GRAVĂ a  
COPILULUI.

**CS:** NIKDY nepoužívejte dětský  
zadržný systém instalovaný proti  
směru jízdy na sedadle, které je  
chráněno před sedadlem AKTIVNÍM  
AIRBAGEM. Mohlo by dojít k  
VÁŽNÉMU PORANĚNÍ nebo ÚMRTÍ  
DÍTĚTE.

**SK:** NIKDY nepoužívajte detskú  
sedačku otočenú vzad na sedadle  
chránenom AKTÍVNÝM AIRBAGOM,  
pretože môže dôjsť k SMRTI alebo  
VÁŽNÝM ZRANENIAM DIETĎAŤA.

**LT:** JOKIU BŪDU nemontuokite atgal  
atgręžtos vaiko tvirtinimo sistemas  
sėdynėje, prieš kurią įrengta AKTYVI  
ORO PAGALVĖ, nes VAIKAS GALI  
ŽŪTI arba RIMTAI SUSIŽALOTI.

**LV:** NEKĀDĀ GADĪJUMĀ  
neizmantojiet uz aiz muguri vērstu  
bērnu sēdekļi sēdvietā, kas tiek  
aizsargāta ar tās priekšā uzstādītu  
AKTĪVU DROŠĪBAS SPILVENU, jo  
pretējā gadījumā BĒRNS var gūt  
SMAGAS TRAUMAS vai IET BOJĀ.

**ET:** ÄRGE kasutage tahapoole  
suunatud lapseturvaistet istmel, mille  
ees on AKTIIVSE TURVAPADJAGA  
kaitstud iste, sest see võib  
põhjustada LAPSE SURMA või  
TÕSISE VIGASTUSE.

**MT:** QATT tuża trażżin għat-tfal li  
jgħares lejn in-naħa ta' wara fuq sit  
protett b'AIRBAG ATTIV quddiemu;  
dan jista' jikkawża l-MEWT jew  
GRIEHI SERJI lit-TFAL.

**GA:** Ná húsáid srian sábháilteachta  
linbh cúil RIAMH ar shuíochán a  
bhfuil mála aeir ag feidhmiú os a  
chomhair. Tá baol BÁIS nó GORTÚ  
DONA don PHÁISTE ag baint leis.

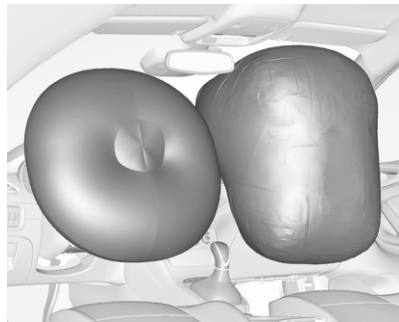
Beyond the warning required by  
ECE R94.02, for safety reasons a  
forward-facing child restraint system  
must only be used subject to the  
instructions and restrictions in the  
table ⇨ 69.

The airbag label is located on both  
sides of the front passenger sun visor.  
Airbag deactivation ⇨ 65.

## Front airbag system

The front airbag system consists of one airbag in the steering wheel and one in the instrument panel on the front passenger side. These can be identified by the word **AIRBAG**.

The front airbag system is triggered in the event of a front-end impact of a certain severity. The ignition must be switched on.



The inflated airbags cushion the impact, thereby reducing the risk of injury to the upper body and head of the front seat occupants considerably.

### Warning

Optimum protection is only provided when the seat is in the proper position.

Seat position ⇨ 49.

Keep the area in which the airbag inflates clear of obstructions.

Fit the seat belt correctly and engage securely. Only then is the airbag able to protect.

## Side airbag system



The side airbag system consists of an airbag in each front seat backrest. This can be identified by the word **AIRBAG**.

The side airbag system is triggered in the event of a side impact of a certain severity. The ignition must be switched on.



The inflated airbags cushion the impact, thereby reducing the risk of injury to the upper body and pelvis in the event of a side-on collision considerably.

### Warning

Keep the area in which the airbag inflates clear of obstructions.

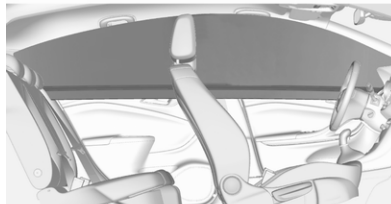
#### Note

Only use protective seat covers that have been approved for the vehicle. Be careful not to cover the airbags.

## Curtain airbag system

The curtain airbag system consists of an airbag in the roof frame on each side. This can be identified by the word **AIRBAG** on the roof pillars.

The curtain airbag system is triggered in the event of a side-on impact of a certain severity. The ignition must be switched on.



The inflated airbags cushion the impact, thereby reducing the risk of injury to the head in the event of a side-on impact considerably.

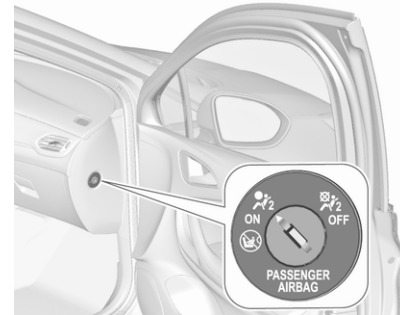
### Warning

Keep the area in which the airbag inflates clear of obstructions.

The hooks on the handles in the roof frame are only suitable for hanging up light articles of clothing, without coat hangers. Do not keep any items in these clothes.



## Airbag deactivation


The front passenger airbag system must be deactivated for child restraint system on the passenger seat according to the instructions in the table ↗ 69. The side airbag and curtain airbag systems, the belt pretensioners and all driver airbag systems will remain active.



The front passenger airbag system can be deactivated via a key-operated switch on the passenger side of the instrument panel.

Use the ignition key to choose the position:

 OFF : front passenger airbag is deactivated and will not inflate in the event of a collision. Control indicator  OFF illuminates continuously in the overhead console.


 ON : front passenger airbag is active


### Danger

Deactivate passenger airbag only in combination with the use of a child restraint system, subject to the instructions and restrictions in the table ⇨ 69.

Otherwise, there is a risk of fatal injury for a person occupying a seat with a deactivated front passenger airbag.



If the control indicator  illuminates for approx. 60 seconds after the ignition is switched on, the front passenger airbag system will inflate in the event of a collision.

If the control indicator  illuminates after the ignition is switched on, the front passenger airbag system is deactivated. It stays on while the airbag is deactivated.

If both control indicators are illuminated at the same time, there is a system failure. The status of the system is not discernible, therefore no person is allowed to occupy the front passenger seat. Contact a workshop immediately.

Consult a workshop immediately if neither of the two control indicators are illuminated.

Change status only when the vehicle is stopped with the ignition off.

Status remains until the next change.

Control indicator for airbag deactivation ⇨ 107.



## Child restraints

### Child restraint systems

#### Danger

If using a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat, the airbag system for the front passenger seat must be deactivated. This also applies to certain forward-facing child restraint systems as indicated in the tables ⇨ 69.

Airbag deactivation ⇨ 65.

Airbag label ⇨ 60.

We recommend a child restraint system which is tailored specifically to the vehicle. For further information, contact your workshop.

When a child restraint system is being used, pay attention to the following usage and installation instructions as well as to those supplied with the child restraint system.

Always comply with local or national regulations. In some countries, the use of child restraint systems is forbidden on certain seats.

Child restraint systems can be fastened with:

- Three-point seat belt
- ISOFIX brackets
- Top-tether anchor

#### Three-point seat belt

Child restraint systems can be fastened by using a three-point seat belt. Depending on the size of the used child restraint systems, up to three child restraint systems can be attached to the rear seats. After fastening the child restraint system the seat belt has to be tightened ⇨ 69.

#### ISOFIX brackets



Fasten vehicle-approved ISOFIX child restraint systems to the ISOFIX brackets. Specific vehicle ISOFIX child restraint system positions are marked in the ISOFIX table ⇨ 69.

ISOFIX brackets are indicated by a label on the backrest.

An i-size child restraint system is an universal ISOFIX child restraint system according UN Regulation No. 129.


All i-size child restraint systems can be used on any vehicle seat suitable for i-size, i-size table ⇨ 69.

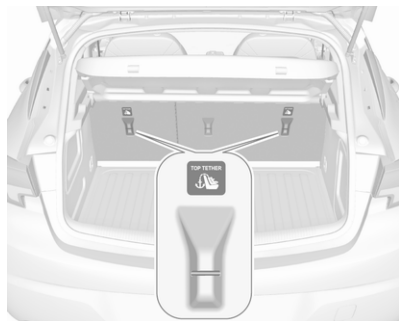
Either a Top-tether strap or a support leg must be used in addition to the ISOFIX brackets.



i-size child seats and vehicle seats with i-size approval are marked with i-size symbol, see illustration.

### Top-tether anchors

Top-tether anchors are marked with the symbol  for a child seat.



In addition to the ISOFIX brackets, fasten the Top-tether strap to the Top-tether anchors.

ISOFIX child restraint systems of universal category positions are marked in the table by IUF ⇨ 69.

### Selecting the right system

The rear seats are the most convenient location to fasten a child restraint system.

Children should travel facing rearwards in the vehicle as long as possible. This makes sure that the child's backbone, which is still very weak, is under less strain in the event of an accident.

Suitable are restraint systems that comply with valid UN ECE regulations. Check local laws and regulations for mandatory use of child restraint systems.

The following child restraints are recommended for the following weight classes:

Maxi Cosi Cabriofix for children up to 13 kg for group 0, group 0+ and Duo Plus for children from 13 kg to 18 kg in group I.

Ensure that the child restraint system to be installed is compatible with the vehicle type.

Ensure that the mounting location of the child restraint system within the vehicle is correct, see following tables.

Allow children to enter and exit the vehicle only on the side facing away from the traffic.

When the child restraint system is not in use, secure the seat with a seat belt or remove it from the vehicle.

### Note

Do not affix anything on the child restraint systems and do not cover them with any other materials.

A child restraint system which has been subjected to stress in an accident must be replaced.

## Child restraint installation locations

### Installation of universal, ISOFIX and i-Size child seats

As required by European regulations, this table gives the options for installing child seats secured using the seat belt and universally approved as well as the larger ISOFIX and i-Size child seats on seat positions equipped with ISOFIX mountings in the vehicle.

|  | Front passenger seat   | Rear outer seats           | Rear centre seat           |
|--|--|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| <b>Position compatible with a universal child seat <sup>1)</sup></b> | Yes <sup>2) 3)</sup> , with deactivated passenger airbag <sup>4)</sup><br>Yes <sup>5) 3)</sup> , with activated passenger airbag <sup>6)</sup> | Yes <sup>7) 8)</sup>       | Yes <sup>7) 8) 9)</sup>    |
| <b>Position compatible with an i-Size child seat</b>                 | No   | Yes <sup>7) 8)</sup>       | No <sup>9)</sup>           |
| <b>Position equipped with a top-tether fixing</b>                    | No   | Yes                        | No <sup>10)</sup>          |
| <b>Carrycot type of child seat</b>                                   | No lateral facing position   | No lateral facing position | No lateral facing position |
| <b>Rearward facing ISOFIX child seat</b>                             | No   | R3 <sup>7) 8)</sup>        | No <sup>10)</sup>          |
| <b>Forward facing ISOFIX child seat</b>                              | No   | F2X <sup>7) 8)</sup>       | No <sup>10)</sup>          |

|   | Front passenger seat | Rear outer seats                              | Rear centre seat  |
|---|----------------------|---|-------------------|
| <b>Forward facing ISOFIX child seat</b> | No                   | F3 <sup>7)</sup> <sup>8)</sup>                | No <sup>10)</sup> |
| <b>Booster child seat</b>               | No                   | B3 <sup>7)</sup> <sup>8)</sup> <sup>11)</sup> | No <sup>10)</sup> |

1) Universal child seat: child seat that can be installed in all vehicles using the seat belt.

2) For universal child seat : groups 0, 0+ and I only.

3) Move seat forwards as far as necessary and adjust seat backrest as far as necessary to a vertical position to ensure that the seat belt runs forwards from the upper anchorage point and the seat belt is tight on the buckle side.

4) To install a rearward facing child seat at this seat position, the front passenger's airbag must be deactivated OFF.

5) For universal child seat : groups II and III only.

6) Only a forward facing child seat is authorised at this seat position with the front passenger's airbag activated ON.

7) Move the respective front seat ahead of the child restraint system forwards as far as necessary.

8) Adjust the respective headrest as necessary or remove if required.

9) A child seat with a support leg must never be installed on the centre rear passenger seat.

10) Seats not fitted with ISOFIX compliant mountings.

11) Do not fold down the backrest.

#### Rules:

- A position that is i-Size compatible is also compatible for R1, R2 and F2X, F2, B2.
- A position that is R3 compatible is also compatible for R1 and R2.
- A position that is R2 compatible is also compatible for R1.
- A position that is F3 compatible is also compatible for F2X and F2.
- A position that is B3 compatible is also compatible for B2.

## Storage

|                                   |           |
|-----------------------------------|-----------|
| <b>Storage compartments</b> ..... | <b>71</b> |
| Glovebox .....                    | 71        |
| Cupholders .....                  | 71        |
| Front storage .....               | 72        |
| Armrest storage .....             | 72        |
| <b>Load compartment</b> .....     | <b>73</b> |
| Load compartment cover .....      | 79        |
| Rear floor storage cover .....    | 80        |
| Lashing eyes .....                | 81        |
| Cargo management system .....     | 82        |
| Safety net .....                  | 84        |
| Warning triangle .....            | 86        |
| First aid kit .....               | 86        |
| <b>Roof rack system</b> .....     | <b>87</b> |
| Roof rack .....                   | 87        |
| <b>Loading information</b> .....  | <b>88</b> |

## Storage compartments

### ⚠ Warning

Do not store heavy or sharp objects in the storage compartments. Otherwise, the storage compartment lid could open and vehicle occupants could be injured by objects being thrown around in the event of hard braking, a sudden change in direction or an accident.

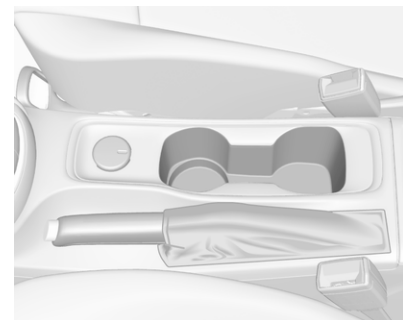
### Glovebox



The glovebox features a pen holder, a coin holder and an adapter for the locking wheel nuts.

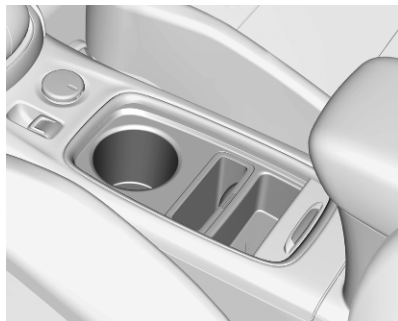
The glovebox should be closed whilst driving.

### Cupholders



Cupholders are located in the centre console.

Illustrations show different versions.



Depending on the version, cupholders are located under a cover in the centre console. Slide cover backwards.

## Front storage



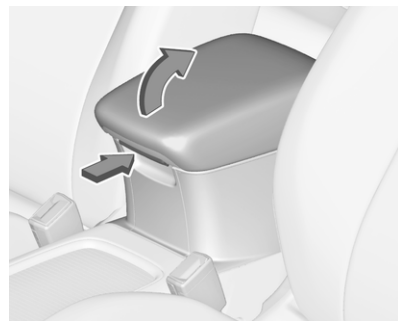
A storage compartment is located next to the steering wheel.



A combined storage and mobile device compartment is located in the instrument panel center stack.

## Armrest storage

### Storage under the front armrest



Press button to fold up the armrest. The armrest must be in rearmost position.

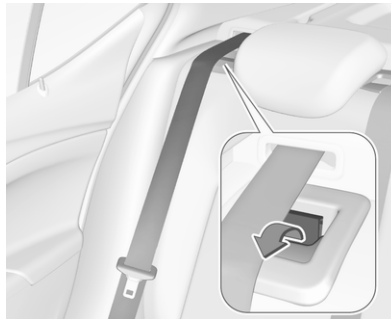
## Load compartment

Depending on the equipment, the rear seat backrest is divided into two or three parts. All parts can be folded down.

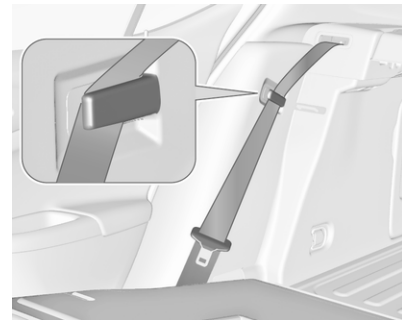
Before folding rear seat backrests, execute the following if necessary:

- 5-door hatchback: remove the load compartment cover ⇨ 79.
- Sports Tourer: remove roller blind ⇨ 79.
- Press and hold the catch to push the head restraints down ⇨ 48.
- Remove the rear head restraints to have the backrests fully rest on the seat cushions ⇨ 48.

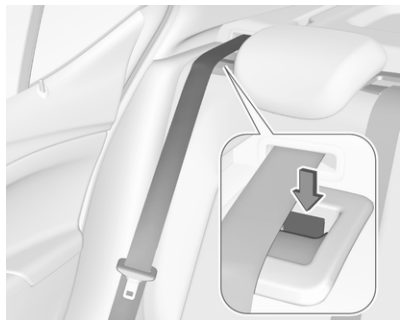
### Load compartment extension (two-part rear seat backrest), 5-door Hatchback



- Guide the seat belts of the outer seats through side supports to protect them against damage. When folding the backrests, pull the seat belts along with them.
- Pull the lever on one or both outer sides and fold down the backrests onto the seat cushion.



- Take the seat belt out of the seat backrest guide and put it behind the retainer as shown in the illustration.
- To fold up, raise the backrests and guide them into an upright position until they engage audibly.



The backrests are properly engaged when the red mark near the lever is no longer visible.

### **⚠ Warning**

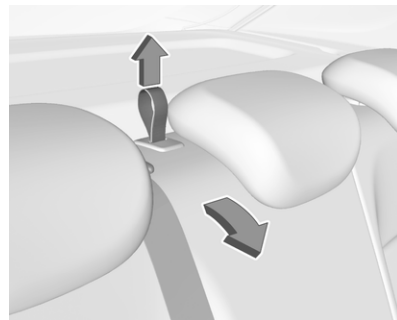
When folding up, ensure that backrests are securely locked in position before driving. Failure to do so may result in personal injury or damage to the load or vehicle in the event of hard braking or a collision.



The seat belt of the centre seat could be blocked when the backrest is folded up too quickly. To unlock the retractor, push in the seat belt or pull it out by approx. 20 mm then release.

### **Load compartment extension (three-part rear seat backrest), 5-door Hatchback**

- Fold up the rear armrest.

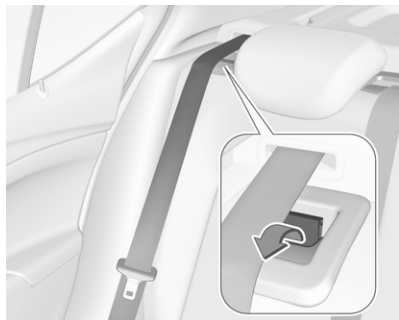


- Pull the loop and fold down the backrest of the centre seat.
- Pull the lever on one or both outer sides and fold down the backrests onto the seat cushion.

### **⚠ Warning**

Take care when folding down the right outer seat backrest if the centre seat backrest is already folded down. Risk of injury due to bolt protruding from the inner side of the backrest.

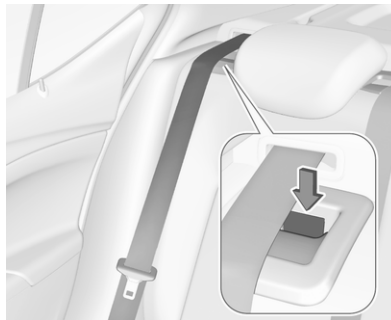




- Guide the seat belts of the outer seats through side supports to protect them against damage. When folding the backrests, pull the seat belts along with them.



- Take the seat belt out of the seat backrest guide and put it behind the retainer as shown in the illustration.
- To fold up, raise the backrests and guide them into an upright position until they engage audibly.



The backrests are properly engaged when the red mark on both sides near the lever are no longer visible.

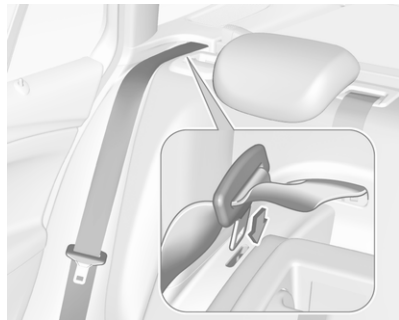
### **⚠ Warning**

When folding up, ensure that backrests are securely locked in position before driving. Failure to do so may result in personal injury or damage to the load or vehicle in the event of hard braking or a collision.



The seat belt of the centre seat could be blocked when the backrest is folded up too quickly. To unlock the retractor, push in the seat belt or pull it out by approx. 20 mm then release.

### Load compartment extension (two-part rear seat backrest), Sports Tourer



- Insert latch plates of the outer seat belts into side holder to protect the belts against damage, see illustration.



- Pull the lever on one or both outer sides and fold down the backrests onto the seat cushion.
- To fold up, raise the backrests and guide them into an upright position until they engage audibly.



The backrests are properly engaged when the red mark on both sides near the lever are no longer visible.

#### **⚠ Warning**

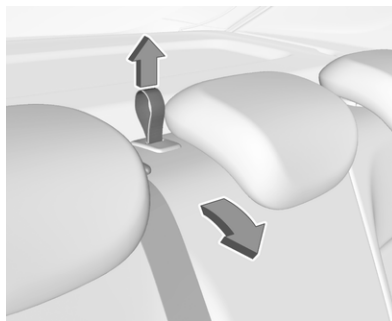
When folding up, ensure that backrests are securely locked in position before driving. Failure to do so may result in personal injury or damage to the load or vehicle in the event of hard braking or a collision.



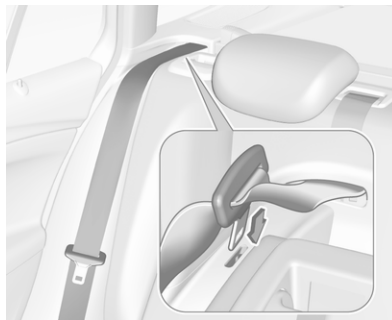
The seat belt of the centre seat could be blocked when the backrest is folded up too quickly. To unlock the retractor, push in the seat belt or pull it out by approx. 20 mm then release.

### **Load compartment extension (three-part rear seat backrest), Sports Tourer**

- Fold up the rear centre armrest.



- Pull the loop and fold down the backrest of the centre seat.



- Insert latch plates of the outer seat belts into side holder to protect the belts against damage, see illustration.



- Pull the lever on one or both outer sides and fold down the backrests onto the seat cushion.

### **⚠ Warning**

Take care when folding down the right outer seat backrest if the centre seat backrest is already folded down. Risk of injury due to bolt protruding from the inner side of the backrest.



- Alternatively fold seat backrests from the load compartment: pull switch on left or right sidewall of the load compartment to fold the corresponding part of the rear seat backrest.

### **⚠ Warning**

Take care when operating the rear backrests from the load compartment. The backrest is folded with considerable power. Risk of injury, particularly to children.

Ensure that nothing is attached to the rear seats or located on the seat cushion.

- To fold up, raise the backrests and guide them into an upright position until they engage audibly.



The backrests are properly engaged when the red mark on the levers on both sides are no longer visible.

### **⚠ Warning**

When folding up, ensure that backrests are securely locked in position before driving. Failure to do so may result in personal injury or damage to the load or vehicle in the event of hard braking or a collision.



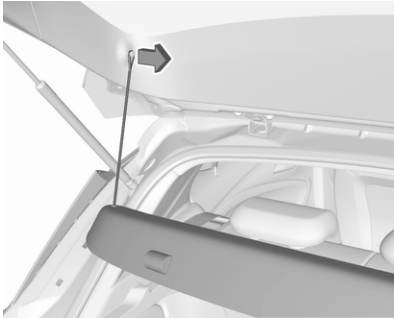
The seat belt of the centre seat could be blocked when the backrest is folded up too quickly. To unlock the retractor, push in the seat belt or pull it out by approx. 20 mm then release.

## Load compartment cover

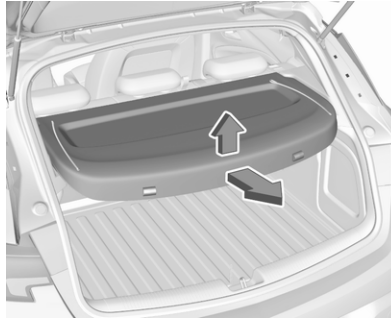
Do not place any objects on the cover.

### 5-door hatchback

#### Removing cover



Unhook retaining straps from tailgate.



Lift cover at the rear.

Remove the cover.

#### Fitting cover

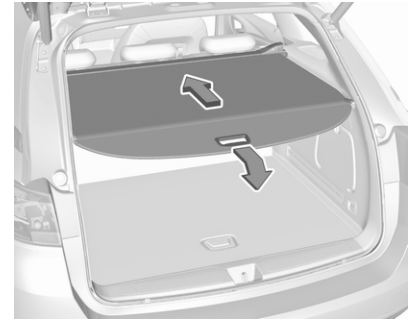
Engage cover in side guides and fold downwards. Attach retaining straps to tailgate.

### Sports Tourer

#### Closing roller blind

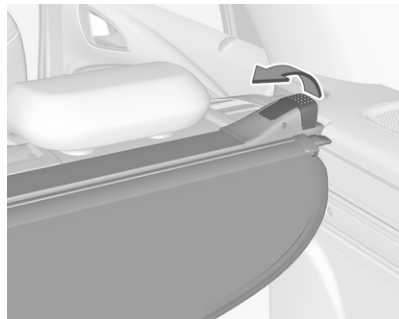
Pull the roller blind using the handle towards the rear and upwards until it engages in the sideward retainers.

#### Opening roller blind



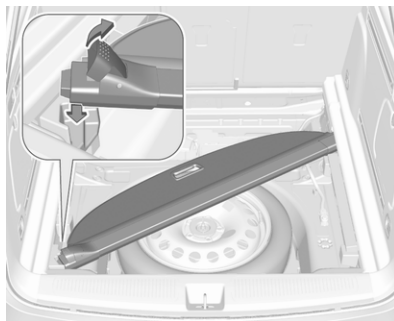
Pull the roller blind handle to the rear and downwards. It rolls up automatically.

### Removing roller blind



Open the roller blind.

Pull the lever on the right side up and hold it. Lift the roller blind first on the right side and remove from retainers.



All engine versions, except CNG: The removed roller blind can be stored under the rear floor cover as shown in the illustration. Insert the left side of the rolled up cover first in the front right recess, pull the lever up and insert the right side in the front left recess.

Rear floor storage cover ⇨ 80.

### Installing roller blind

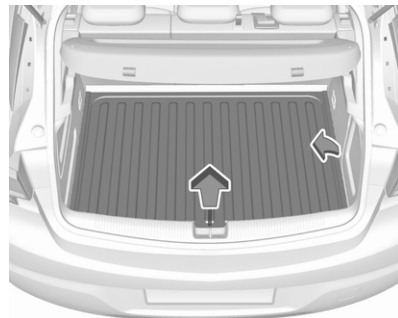
Insert the left side of the roller blind in recess, then pull lever up.

Hold and insert the right side of the roller blind in recess and engage.

## Rear floor storage cover

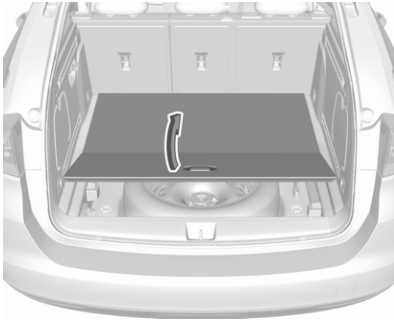
### Rear floor cover

#### 5-door Hatchback



The rear floor cover can be removed. Raise cover at the rear and slightly rotate at one side before removing.

### Sports Tourer



Pull the handle and fold the rear part of the cover forward.



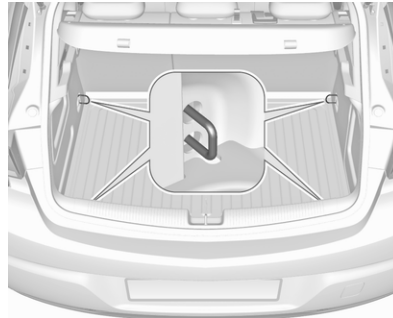
Set up the folded cover upright behind the rear seat backrests.

### Lashing eyes

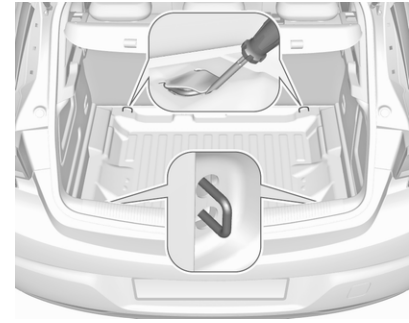
The lashing eyes are designed to secure items against slippage, e.g. using lashing straps or luggage net.

### 5-door Hatchback

First remove the rear floor storage cover to get access to the lashing eyes.



On vehicles equipped with a spare wheel, the front lashing eyes are located at the sidewalls.



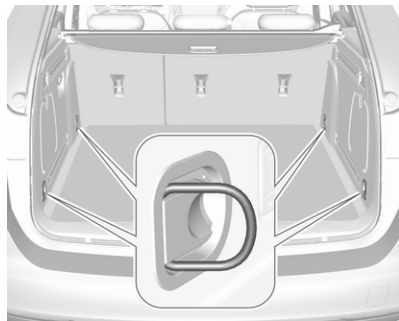
On vehicles equipped with tyre repair kit, the front lashing eyes are located underneath the rear floor cover behind the rear seats. To get access to the lashing eyes, open the perforated parts of the cover by using the screwdriver.

Vehicle tools ⇨ 246.

Stick the screwdriver through the cover as shown in the illustration and fold up the perforated part of the cover.

Fold up the lashing eyes by using the screwdriver.

## Sports Tourer



Front and rear lashing eyes are located at the sidewalls. Fold up the lashing eyes to use and fold down when not required.

## Cargo management system

The FlexOrganizer is a flexible system for dividing up the load compartment.

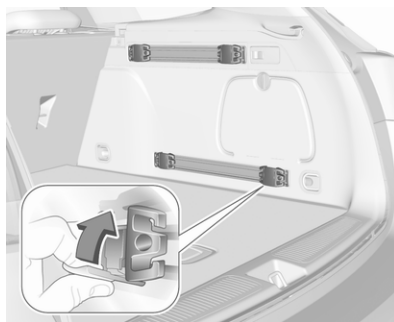
The system consists of:

- adapters
- mesh pockets
- hooks

- service box
- strap set

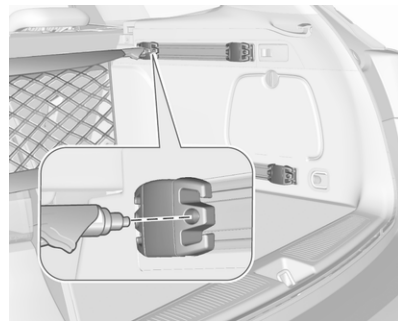
The components are fitted in rails on both side panels using adapters and hooks.

### Installation of adapters in the rails



Fold open the handle plate, insert the adapter into the upper and lower groove of the rail and move to the required position. Turn the handle plate upwards to lock the adapter. To remove, turn the handle plate down and move out of the rail.

## Variable partition net



Insert adapters into the required position in the rails. Stick together the halves of the net rods.

To install, push rods together a little and insert into the relevant openings in the adapters.

To remove, press the net rods together and remove from the adapters.

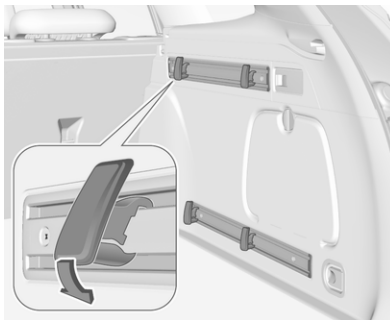


### Net pocket



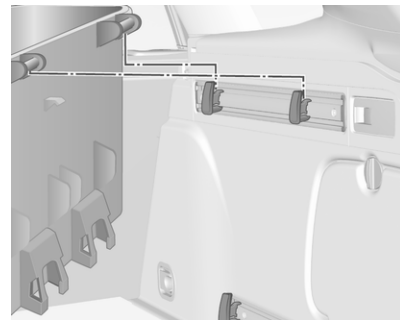
Insert adapters into the required position in the rails. The net pocket can be suspended from the adapters.

### Installation of hooks in the rails

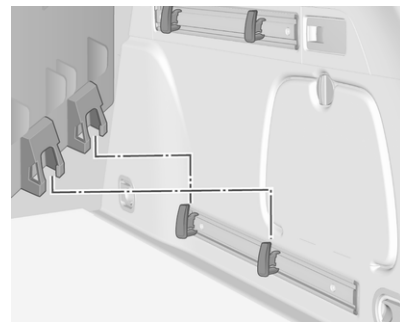


Insert the hook in the desired position first in the upper groove of the rail and then press in the lower groove. To remove, first pull out of the upper groove.

### Service box

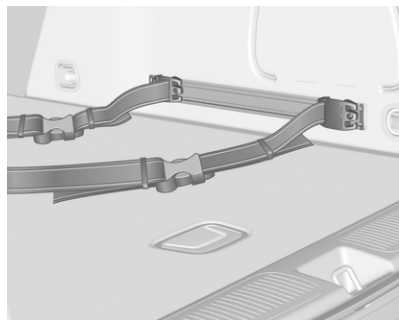


Install two hooks in the upper rail. Insert the upper brackets of the box from above into the hooks.



Alternatively install both hooks in the lower rail. Plug in the lower brackets of the box from above into the lower hooks.

### Strap set



Insert the adapters of the strap set in a rail. Make sure that the belt is not twisted.

The strap set has two locks to open. The belt can be tightened.

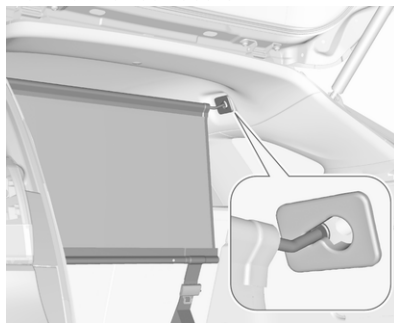
### Safety net

The safety net is available on the Sports Tourer and can be installed behind the rear seats or, if the rear seat backrests are folded, behind the front seats.

Passengers must not be transported behind the safety net.

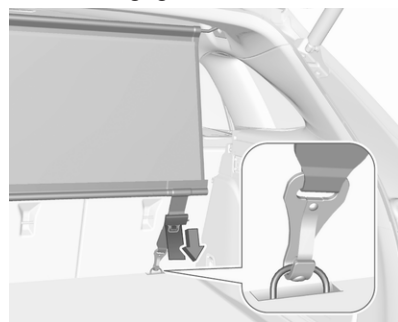
### Installation

#### Behind the rear seats



- There are installation openings on both sides in the roof frame above the rear seats: suspend

and engage rod of net at one side, compress rod and suspend and engage at the other side.

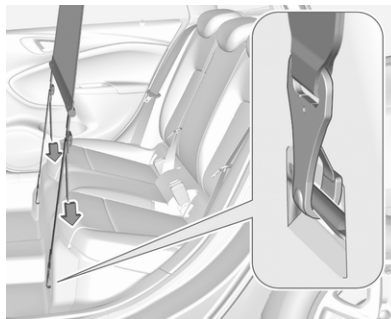


- Attach the hooks of safety net straps in loops underneath the rear floor cover behind the rear seats. To get access to the loops, open the perforated parts in the floor cover on both sides by using the screwdriver and fold up the loops. Attach the hooks to the loops.
- Tension both straps by pulling at the loose end.
- Rear seat backrests must be raised up.

### Behind the front seats

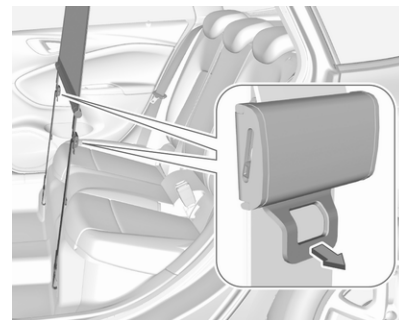


- There are installation openings on both sides in the roof frame above the front seats: suspend and engage rod of net at one side, compress rod and suspend and engage at the other side.



- Attach hooks of safety net straps to loops in the floor in front of the rear seats. To get access to the loops, push in the perforated parts in the floor cover on both sides. Attach the hooks to the loops.
- Tension both straps by pulling at the loose end.
- Push down head restraints and fold down rear seat backrests ⇨ 73.

### Removal



Pull the flap at the tightener on both sides to release the straps. Detach hooks from the eyes.

Unhook the safety net rods from the brackets in the roof frame.

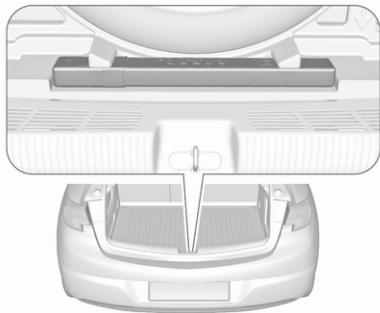
Roll up the net and secure with a strap.

### Stowing

All engine versions, except CNG: The removed safety net can be stored under the rear floor cover ⇨ 80.

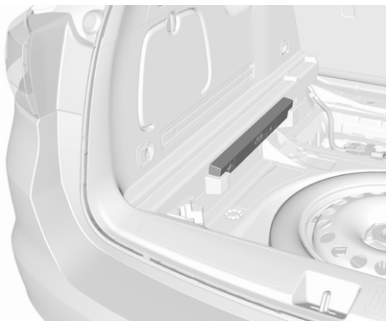
## Warning triangle

### 5-door hatchback



Stow the warning triangle in the recess at the rear of the load compartment.

### Sports Tourer



Stow the warning triangle in the recess under the rear floor cover on the right or left side.

## First aid kit

Stow the first aid kit in the compartment in the left side wall.

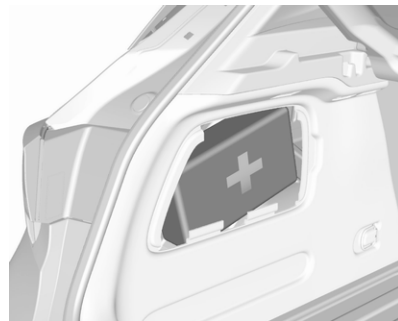


Illustration shows 5-door Hatchback. To open the compartment, disengage cover and open.

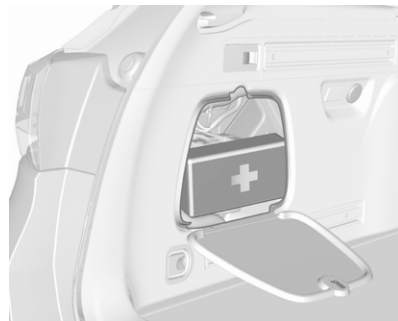


Illustration shows Sports Tourer.

To open the cover turn knob.

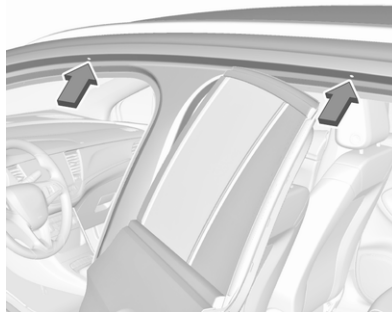
## Roof rack system

### Roof rack

For safety reasons and to avoid damage to the roof, the vehicle approved roof rack system is recommended. For further information contact your workshop.

### Mounting roof rack

#### 5-door Hatchback, Sports Tourer



Open all doors.

Mounting points are located in each door frame of the vehicle body.

Fasten the roof rack according to the installation instructions delivered with the roof rack.

Remove the roof rack when not in use.


### **⚠ Warning**

#### **Sports Tourer**

Roof railings are a styling element only and not designed to carry any load. Installation of roof racks or other accessory is not permitted. Use the designated mounting points in the door frames exclusively.

## Loading information




- Heavy objects in the load compartment should be placed against the seat backrests. Make sure that the backrests are securely engaged, i.e. no longer showing the red markings behind the release levers. If objects can be stacked, heavier objects should be placed at the bottom.
- Prevent sliding of loose objects by securing them with straps attached to the lashing eyes  81.

- Do not allow the load to protrude above the upper edge of the backrests.
- Sports Tourer: install safety net when transporting objects in the load compartment.
- Do not place any objects on the load compartment cover or the instrument panel, and do not cover the sensor on top of the instrument panel.
- The load must not obstruct the operation of the pedals, parking brake and gear selector lever, or hinder the freedom of movement of the driver. Do not place any unsecured objects in the interior.
- Do not drive with an open load compartment.

### Warning

Always make sure that the load in the vehicle is securely stowed. Otherwise objects can be thrown around inside the vehicle and cause personal injury or damage to the load or car.

- The payload is the difference between the permitted gross vehicle weight (see identification plate  274) and the EC kerb weight.

To calculate the payload, enter the data for your vehicle in the weights table at the front of this manual.

The EC kerb weight includes weights for the driver (68 kg), luggage (7 kg) and all fluids (fuel tank 90% full).

Optional equipment and accessories increase the kerb weight.

- Driving with a roof load increases the sensitivity of the vehicle to cross-winds and has a detrimental effect on vehicle handling due to the vehicle's higher centre of gravity. Distribute the load evenly and secure it properly with retaining straps. Adjust the tyre pressure and vehicle speed according to the load conditions. Check and retighten the straps frequently.

Do not drive faster than  
120 km/h.

The permissible roof load is  
75 kg. The roof load is the  
combined weight of the roof rack  
and the load.

# Instruments and controls

## Controls ..... 91

|                                    |    |
|------------------------------------|----|
| Steering wheel adjustment .....    | 91 |
| Steering wheel controls .....      | 91 |
| Heated steering wheel .....        | 91 |
| Horn .....                         | 92 |
| Windscreen wiper and washer ..     | 92 |
| Rear window wiper and washer ..... | 94 |
| Outside temperature .....          | 95 |
| Power outlets .....                | 95 |
| Inductive charging .....           | 96 |
| Ashtrays .....                     | 97 |

## Warning lights, gauges and indicators ..... 98

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| Instrument cluster .....               | 98  |
| Speedometer .....                      | 102 |
| Odometer .....                         | 103 |
| Trip odometer .....                    | 103 |
| Tachometer .....                       | 104 |
| Fuel gauge .....                       | 104 |
| Engine coolant temperature gauge ..... | 104 |
| Service display .....                  | 105 |
| Control indicators .....               | 106 |

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| Turn lights .....  | 106 |
| Seat belt reminder .....                                       | 106 |
| Airbag and belt tensioners .....                               | 107 |
| Airbag deactivation .....                                      | 107 |
| Charging system .....  | 108 |
| Malfunction indicator light .....                              | 108 |
| Brake and clutch system .....                                  | 108 |
| Electric parking brake .....                                   | 108 |
| Electric parking brake fault .....                             | 108 |
| Antilock brake system (ABS) ...                                | 109 |
| Gear shifting .....  | 109 |
| Following distance .....                                       | 109 |
| Lane keep assist .....   | 109 |
| Electronic Stability Control off .                             | 109 |
| Electronic Stability Control and Traction Control system ..... | 109 |
| Traction Control system off ....                               | 110 |
| Engine coolant temperature ...                                 | 110 |
| Preheating .....   | 110 |
| AdBlue .....   | 110 |
| Tyre pressure monitoring system .....                          | 110 |
| Engine oil pressure .....                                      | 110 |
| Low fuel .....   | 111 |
| Immobiliser .....  | 111 |
| Exterior light .....   | 111 |
| High beam .....  | 111 |
| High beam assist .....   | 111 |
| LED headlights .....   | 111 |
| Front fog lights .....   | 112 |

|                               |     |
|-------------------------------|-----|
| Rear fog light .....          | 112 |
| Cruise control .....          | 112 |
| Adaptive cruise control ..... | 112 |
| Vehicle detected ahead .....  | 112 |
| Pedestrian detection .....    | 112 |
| Speed limiter .....           | 112 |
| Traffic sign assistant .....  | 113 |
| Door open .....               | 113 |

## Displays ..... 113

|                                 |     |
|---------------------------------|-----|
| Driver Information Centre ..... | 113 |
| Info Display .....              | 119 |

## Vehicle messages ..... 120

|                       |     |
|-----------------------|-----|
| Warning chimes .....  | 121 |
| Battery voltage ..... | 121 |

## Vehicle personalisation ..... 122

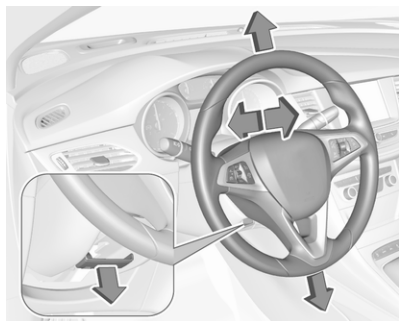
## Telematics service ..... 127

|                      |     |
|----------------------|-----|
| Emergency call ..... | 127 |
|----------------------|-----|



## Controls

### Steering wheel adjustment



Unlock lever, adjust steering wheel, then engage lever and ensure it is fully locked.

Do not adjust steering wheel unless vehicle is stationary and steering wheel lock has been released.

### Steering wheel controls



Cruise control and speed limiter are operated via the controls on the left side of the steering wheel.

Additionally, forward collision alert can be set by using the controls on the left side of the steering wheel.


Infotainment system can be operated via the controls on the steering wheel.

Driver assistance systems ➔ 174.

Further information is available in the Infotainment manual.

### Heated steering wheel



Activate heating by pressing . Activation is indicated by the LED in the button.

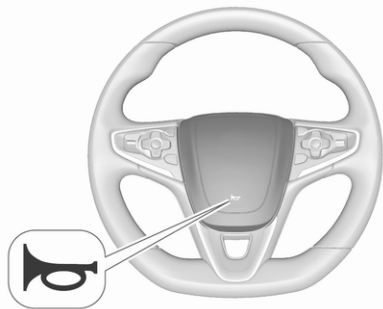


The recommended grip areas of the steering wheel are heated quicker and to a higher temperature than the other areas.

Heating is operational when the engine is running and during an Autostop.

Stop-start system ⇨ 155.

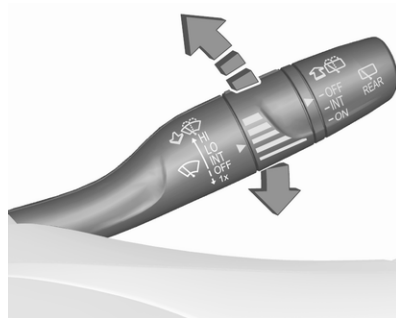
## Horn



Press .

## Windscreen wiper and washer

### Windscreen wiper with adjustable wiper interval



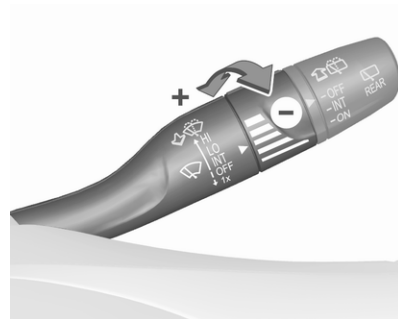
**HI** : fast  
**LO** : slow  
**INT** : interval wiping  
**OFF** : off

For a single wipe when the windscreen wiper is off, press the lever downwards to position **1x**.

Do not use if the windscreen is frozen.

Switch off in car washes.

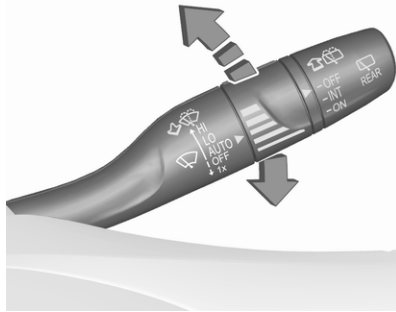
### Adjustable wiper interval



Wiper lever in position **INT**.

Turn the adjuster wheel to adjust the wiping frequency.

## Windscreen wiper with rain sensor



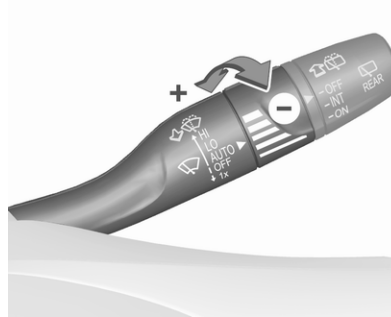
- HI** : fast  
**LO** : slow  
**AUTO** : automatic wiping with rain sensor  
**OFF** : off

In **AUTO** position, the rain sensor detects the amount of water on the windscreen and automatically regulates the frequency of the windscreen wiper.

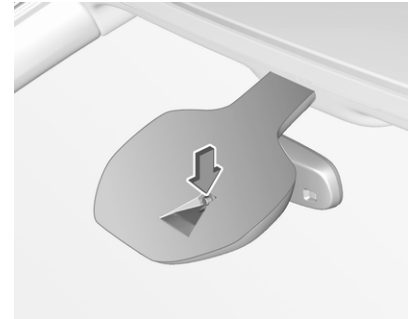
For a single wipe when the windscreen wiper is off, press the lever downwards to position **1x**.

Do not use if the windscreen is frozen.  
Switch off in car washes.

## Adjustable sensitivity of the rain sensor



Wiper lever in position **AUTO**.  
Turn the adjuster wheel to adjust the sensitivity of the rain sensor.



Keep the sensor free from dust, dirt and ice.

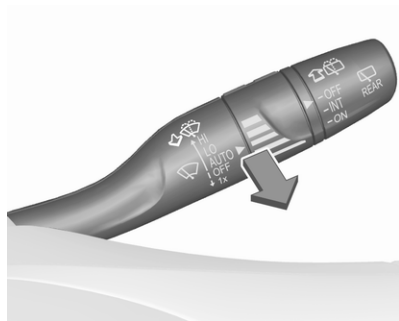
Rain sensor function can be activated or deactivated in the Vehicle personalisation.

Select the relevant setting in **Settings** ♦ **Vehicle** in the Info Display.

Info Display ⇨ 119.

Vehicle personalisation ⇨ 122.

## Windscreen washer



Pull lever. Washer fluid is sprayed onto the windscreen and the wiper wipes a few times.

Washer fluid ↗ 225.

## Rear window wiper and washer

### Rear window wiper



**OFF** : off  
**INT** : intermittent operation  
**ON** : continuous operation

Do not use if the rear window is frozen.

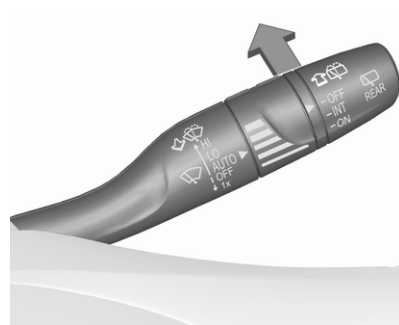
Switch off in car washes.

The rear window wiper comes on automatically when the windscreen wiper is switched on and reverse gear is engaged.

Activation or deactivation of this function can be changed in the menu **Settings** in the Info Display.

Vehicle personalisation ↗ 122.

### Rear window washer



Push lever.

Washer fluid is sprayed onto the rear window and the wiper wipes a few times.

The rear window washer system is deactivated when the fluid level is low.

Washer fluid ↗ 225.

## Outside temperature

A drop in temperature is indicated immediately and a rise in temperature after a time delay.



Illustration shows an example.



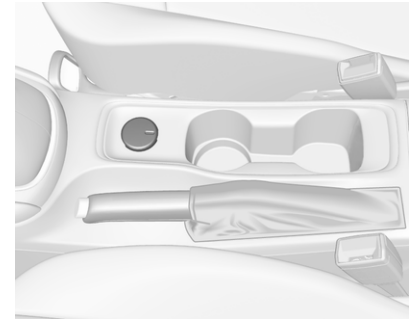
Ice Possible.  
Drive  
with Care

If outside temperature drops to 3 °C, a warning message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

### Warning

The road surface may already be icy even though the display indicates a few degrees above 0 °C.

## Power outlets



A 12 V power outlet is located in the centre console. With ignition off, this power outlet is deactivated.

Do not exceed the maximum power consumption of 120 W.

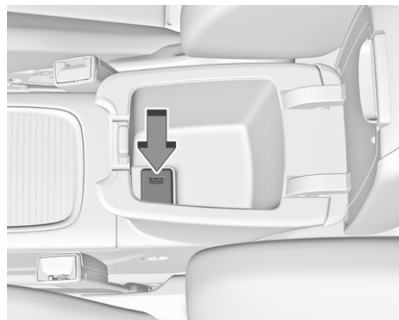
Electrical accessories that are connected must comply with the electromagnetic compatibility requirements laid down in DIN VDE 40 839.

Do not connect any current-delivering accessories, e.g. electrical charging devices or batteries.

Do not damage the outlets by using unsuitable plugs.

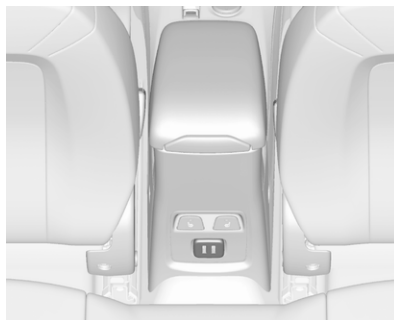
Stop-start system ⇨ 155.

## USB port



Depending on the infotainment system, one or two USB ports for charging devices are located in between the front seats. These ports have also a data connection to the Infotainment system. For further information, see Infotainment manual.

## USB charging port



Two USB ports for charging devices only are located in the back of the centre console.

Each socket provides 2.1 A at 5 V.

### Note

The sockets must always be kept clean and dry.

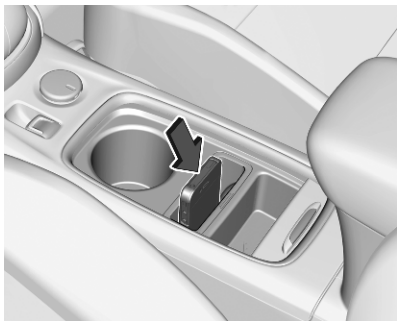
## Inductive charging

### ⚠ Warning

Inductive charging can affect the operation of implanted pacemakers or other medical devices. If applicable, seek medical advice before using the inductive charging device.

### ⚠ Warning


Remove any metal objects from the charging device before charging a mobile device, as these objects could become very hot.




To charge a device, the ignition must be switched on.

The charging slot is located below the front armrest.

To charge a mobile device:

1. Remove all objects from the charging slot otherwise the system may not charge.
2. Insert the mobile device with the display facing to the rear in the charging slot. Charging status is indicated in the Info display  and shows if mobile device is properly positioned.

If  is not displayed, remove mobile device from the slot. Turn mobile device 180 degrees and wait three seconds before inserting mobile device again.

PMA, Qi and A4WP compatible mobile devices can be charged inductively.

On some mobile devices, a back cover with an integrated coil or a jacket may be required to use inductive charging.

The mobile device must be smaller than 8 cm in width and 15 cm in length to fit into the charging device.

Protective cover for the mobile device could have impact on the inductive charging.

## Ashtrays

| Caution  |
|--|
| To be used only for ash and not for combustible rubbish. |



A portable ashtray can be placed in the cupholders.

## Warning lights, gauges and indicators

### Instrument cluster

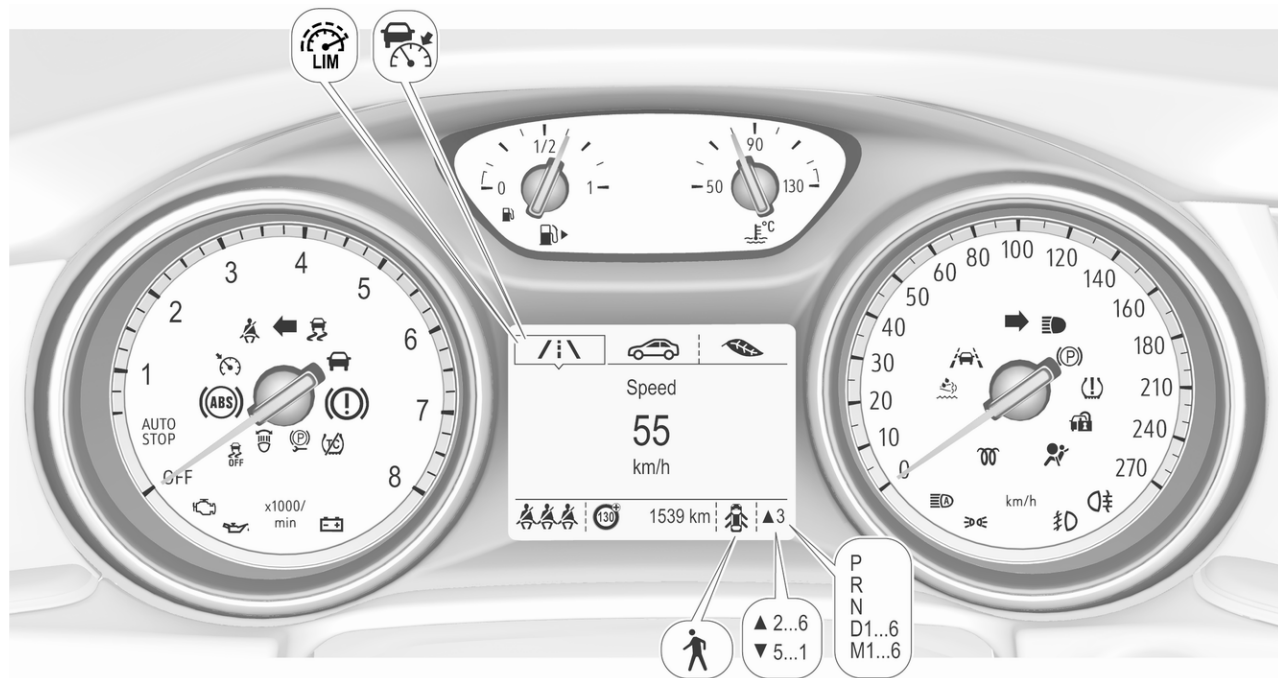
Depending on the version, two instrument clusters are available:

- Baselevel
- Uplevel

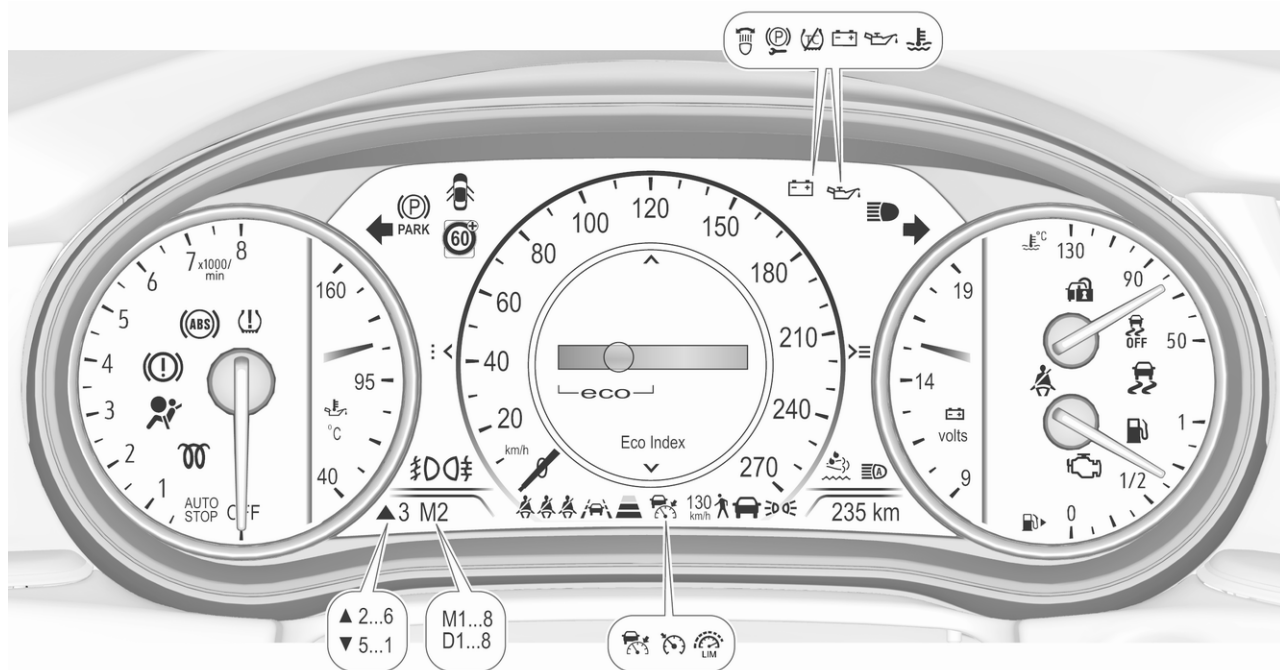
Uplevel instrument cluster can be displayed as Sport mode or Tour mode.



## Baselevel instrument cluster



# Uplevel instrument cluster, Sport mode



## Uplevel instrument cluster, Touring mode



## Overview

Turn lights ⇨ 106

Seat belt reminder ⇨ 106

Airbag and belt tensioners  
⇨ 107

Airbag deactivation ⇨ 107

Charging system ⇨ 108

Malfunction indicator light  
⇨ 108

Brake and clutch system ⇨ 108

Electric parking brake ⇨ 108

Electric parking brake fault  
⇨ 108

Antilock brake system (ABS)  
⇨ 109

Gear shifting ⇨ 109

Following distance ⇨ 109

Lane keep assist ⇨ 109

Electronic Stability Control off  
⇨ 109

Electronic Stability Control and  
Traction Control system ⇨ 109

Traction Control system off  
⇨ 110

Engine coolant temperature  
⇨ 110

Preheating ⇨ 110

AdBlue ⇨ 110

Tyre pressure monitoring  
system ⇨ 110

Engine oil pressure ⇨ 110

Low fuel ⇨ 111

Immobiliser ⇨ 111

Exterior light ⇨ 111

High beam ⇨ 111

High beam assist ⇨ 111

LED headlights ⇨ 111

Front fog lights ⇨ 112

Rear fog light ⇨ 112

Cruise control ⇨ 112 / Adaptive  
cruise control ⇨ 112

Adaptive cruise control ⇨ 112

Vehicle detected ahead ⇨ 112

Pedestrian detected ahead  
⇨ 112

Speed limiter ⇨ 112

Traffic sign assistant ⇨ 113

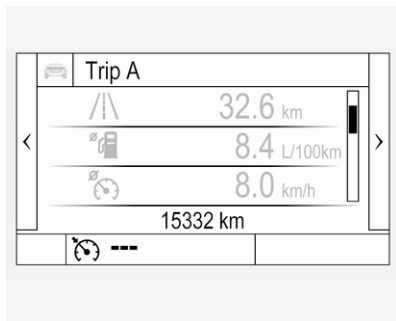
Door open ⇨ 113

## Speedometer



Indicates vehicle speed.

## Odometer



The total recorded distance is displayed in km.

## Trip odometer

The recorded distance since the last reset is displayed on the trip computer page.

Trip odometer counts up to 9,999 km and then restarts at 0.

Two trip odometer pages are selectable for different trips.

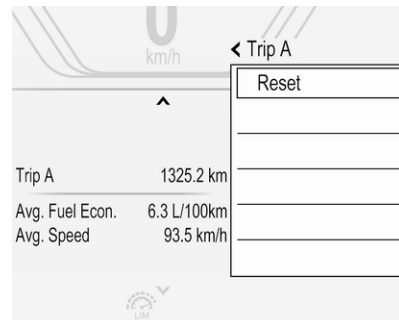
## Baselevel instrument cluster



Select **/i\** on main menu. Choose page **Trip 1** or **Trip 2** by pressing **▼** or **▲** on the steering wheel.

Each trip odometer can be reset separately when ignition is on: select respective page, press **✓** on the steering wheel. Confirm by choosing **Yes**: when the confirmation message is displayed.

## Uplevel instrument cluster



Select **Info** page on main menu. Choose page **Trip A** or **Trip B** by pressing **▼** or **▲** on the steering wheel.

Each trip odometer can be reset separately when ignition is on: select respective page, press **>**. Confirm reset by pressing **✓**.

## Tachometer



Displays the engine speed.

Drive in a low engine speed range for each gear as much as possible.

### Caution

If the needle is in the red warning zone, the maximum permitted engine speed is exceeded. Engine at risk.


## Fuel gauge




Displays the fuel level or gas content (CNG) in the tank depending on the current operation mode.

The arrow indicates the vehicle side where the fuel filler flap is located.

For bi-fuel engines, the Driver Information Centre displays the fuel level for the fuel type which is currently not in operation. The fuel level for the fuel type which is currently in operation is shown in the fuel gauge.

Control indicator  illuminates if the fuel quantity is low.

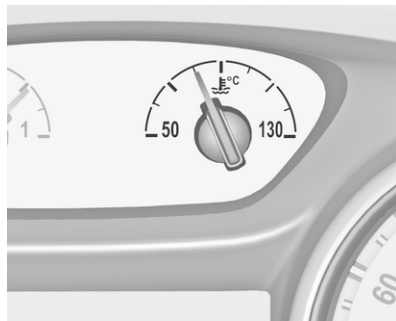
For bi-fuel engines: In petrol mode, the control indicator  illuminates before the needle reaches the red area.

Refuel immediately if  flashes.

Never run the fuel tank dry.

Because of the fuel remaining in the tank, the top-up quantity may be less than the specified fuel tank capacity.

## Engine coolant temperature gauge



Displays the coolant temperature.

|              |  |
|--------------|--|
| 50           | : engine operating temperature not yet reached |
| central area | : normal operating temperature                 |
| 130          | : temperature too high                         |

### Caution

If engine coolant temperature is too high, stop vehicle, switch off engine. Danger to engine. Check coolant level.

## Service display

The engine oil life system informs when to change the engine oil and filter. Based on driving conditions, the interval at which an engine oil and filter change will be indicated can vary considerably.

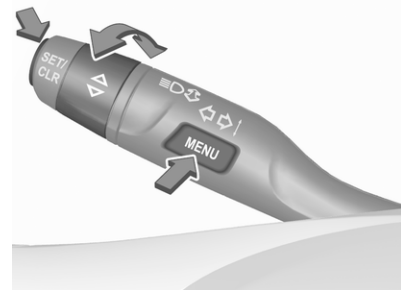
When the system has calculated that engine oil life has been diminished, **Change Engine Oil Soon** appears in the Driver Information Centre. Have engine oil and filter changed by a workshop within one week or 500 km, whichever occurs first.

This can be an additional engine oil and filter change or part of a regular service.

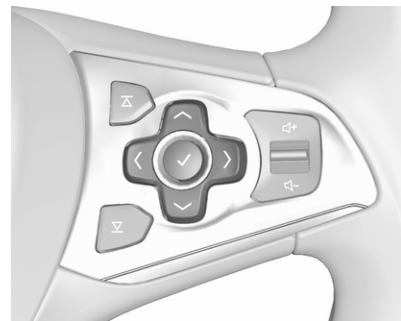
Remaining  
Oil Life

100%

The remaining oil life duration menu is displayed in the Driver Information Centre ↗ 113.



On Midlevel display select the **Settings** Menu by pressing **MENU** on the indicator lever. Turn the adjuster wheel to select the **Remaining Oil Life** page.



On Uplevel display select **Info** Menu by pressing < on steering wheel. Press ∨ to select **Remaining Oil Life** page.

Remaining oil life duration is indicated in percentage.

## Reset

On Midlevel display press **SET/CLR** on the indicator lever for several seconds to reset. The ignition must be switched on but engine not running.

On Uplevel display press > on steering wheel to open the subfolder. Select **Reset** and confirm by pressing ✓ for several seconds. The ignition must be switched on but engine not running.

The system must be reset every time the engine oil is changed to allow proper functionality. Seek the assistance of a workshop.

## Next service

A message appears in the Driver Information Centre, when maintenance of the vehicle is required. Have maintenance work

carried out by a workshop within one week or 500 km, whichever occurs first.

Service information ⇨ 270.

## Control indicators

The control indicators described are not present in all vehicles. The description applies to all instrument versions. Depending on the equipment, the position of the control indicators may vary. When the ignition is switched on, most control indicators will illuminate briefly as a functionality test.

The control indicator colours mean:

red : danger, important reminder  
yellow : warning, information, fault  
green : confirmation of activation  
blue : confirmation of activation  
white : confirmation of activation

See all control indicators on different instrument clusters ⇨ 98.

## Turn lights

↔ illuminates or flashes green.

## Illuminates briefly

The parking lights are switched on.

## Flashes

The turn lights or the hazard warning flashers are activated.

Rapid flashing: failure of the turn lights or associated fuse, failure of the turn lights on the trailer.

Bulb replacement ⇨ 229.

Fuses ⇨ 239.

Turn lights ⇨ 134.

## Seat belt reminder

### Seat belt reminder on front seats

⚠ for driver's seat illuminates or flashes red in the instrument cluster.





⚡ for front passenger seat illuminates or flashes red in the roof console, when seat is occupied.

### **Illuminates**

After the ignition has been switched on until the seat belt has been fastened.

### **Flashes**

After having started the engine for a maximum of 100 seconds until the seat belt has been fastened.

### **Seat belt status on rear seats (vehicles with Midlevel display)**

⚡ illuminates or flashes white or grey in the Driver Information Centre, after having started the engine.

### **Illuminates white**

Seat belt is unfastened.

### **Illuminates grey**

Seat belt has been fastened.

### **Flashes white or grey**

Fastened seat belt has been unfastened.

Fastening the seat belt ⇨ 59.

### **Seat belt status on rear seats (vehicles with Uplevel display)**

⚡ illuminates green or grey or flashes yellow in the Driver Information Centre, after having started the engine.

### **Illuminates grey**

Seat belt is unfastened.

### **Illuminates green**

Seat belt has been fastened.

### **Flashes yellow**

Fastened seat belt has been unfastened.

Fastening the seat belt ⇨ 59.

### **Airbag and belt tensioners**

⚡ illuminates red.

When the ignition is switched on, the control indicator illuminates for approx. 4 seconds. If it does not illuminate, does not go out after four seconds or illuminates whilst driving, there is a fault in the airbag system. Seek the assistance of a

workshop. The airbags and belt pretensioners may fail to trigger in the event of an accident.

Deployment of the belt pretensioners or airbags is indicated by continuous illumination of ⚡.

### **⚠ Warning**

Have the cause of the fault remedied immediately by a workshop.

Belt pretensioners ⇨ 58.

Airbag system ⇨ 60.

### **Airbag deactivation**



⚡ illuminates yellow.

The front passenger airbag is activated.

⚡ illuminates yellow.

The front passenger airbag is deactivated.

Airbag deactivation ⇨ 65.

## Charging system


 illuminates red.

Illuminates when the ignition is switched on and extinguishes shortly after the engine starts.

## Illuminates when the engine is running

Stop, switch off engine. Vehicle battery is not charging. Engine cooling may be interrupted. The brake servo unit may cease to be effective. Seek the assistance of a workshop.

## Malfunction indicator light

 illuminates or flashes yellow.

Illuminates when the ignition is switched on and extinguishes shortly after the engine starts.

## Illuminates when the engine is running

Fault in the emission control system. The permitted emission limits may be exceeded.

The cleaning process of the exhaust filter is potentially not possible.

Seek the assistance of a workshop immediately.

## Flashes when the engine is running

Fault that could lead to catalytic converter damage. Ease up on the accelerator until the flashing stops. Seek the assistance of a workshop immediately.

## Brake and clutch system

 illuminates red.

The brake and clutch fluid level is too low, when manual parking brake is not applied ⇨ 225.

## Warning

Stop. Do not continue your journey. Consult a workshop.

Illuminates when the manual parking brake is applied and ignition is switched on ⇨ 169.


## Electric parking brake

 illuminates or flashes red.

## Illuminates

Electric parking brake is applied ⇨ 169.

## Flashes

Electric parking brake is not fully applied or released. Depress the brake pedal and attempt to reset the system by first releasing then applying the electric parking brake. If  remains flashing, do not drive and seek the assistance of a workshop.

## Electric parking brake fault

 illuminates or flashes yellow.

## Illuminates

Electric parking brake is operating with degraded performance ⇨ 169.

## Flashes

Electric parking brake is in service mode. Stop vehicle, apply and release the electric parking brake to reset.

### Warning

Have the cause of the fault remedied immediately by a workshop. Avoid parking on inclines until the cause of the fault has been remedied.

## Antilock brake system (ABS)

 illuminates yellow.

Illuminates for a few seconds after the ignition is switched on. The system is ready for operation when the control indicator extinguishes.


If the control indicator does not go out after a few seconds, or if it illuminates while driving, there is a fault in the ABS. The brake system remains operational but without ABS regulation.

Antilock brake system ⇨ 168.

## Gear shifting


▲ or ▼ with the number of a higher or lower gear is indicated, when up- or downshifting is recommended for fuel saving reasons.

## Following distance

 indicates the following distance setting of the alert timing sensitivity for the forward collision alert using filled distance bars.

Forward collision alert ⇨ 185.

## Lane keep assist

 illuminates white, green or yellow, or flashes yellow.

## Illuminates white

The system is switched on, but system is not active.

## Illuminates green

The system is switched on and active.

## Illuminates yellow

The system performs a correction.

## Flashes yellow

The system recognises that the lane is departed significantly.

Lane keep assist ⇨ 208.

## Electronic Stability Control off

 illuminates yellow.

The system is deactivated.

## Electronic Stability Control and Traction Control system

 illuminates or flashes yellow.

**Illuminates**

A fault in the system is present. Continued driving is possible. Driving stability, however, may deteriorate depending on road surface conditions.

Have the cause of the fault remedied by a workshop.

**Flashes**

The system is actively engaged. Engine output may be reduced and the vehicle may be braked automatically to a small degree.

Electronic Stability Control ⇨ 172.

Traction Control system ⇨ 171.

**Traction Control system off**

 illuminates yellow.

The system is deactivated.

**Engine coolant temperature**

 illuminates red.

**Illuminates when the engine is running**

Stop, switch off engine.

| Caution                       |
|-------------------------------|
| Coolant temperature too high. |

Check coolant level immediately ⇨ 224.

If there is sufficient coolant, consult a workshop.

**Preheating**

 illuminates yellow.

Preheating of Diesel engine is activated. Only activates when outside temperature is low. Start the engine when control indicator extinguishes.


**AdBlue**

 flashes yellow.

AdBlue level is low. Refill AdBlue soon to avoid prevention of the engine start.

AdBlue ⇨ 161.

**Tyre pressure monitoring system**

 illuminates or flashes yellow.

**Illuminates**

Tyre pressure loss. Stop immediately and check tyre pressure.

**Flashes**

Fault in system or tyre without pressure sensor mounted (e.g. spare wheel). After 60 to 90 seconds the control indicator illuminates continuously. Consult a workshop.

**Engine oil pressure**

 illuminates red.

Illuminates when the ignition is switched on and extinguishes shortly after the engine starts.

## Illuminates when the engine is running

### Caution

Engine lubrication may be interrupted. This may result in damage to the engine and/or locking of the drive wheels.

1. Select neutral gear.
2. Move out of the flow of traffic as quickly as possible without impeding other vehicles.
3. Switch off ignition.

### ⚠ Warning

When the engine is off, considerably more force is needed to brake and steer.

During an Autostop, the brake servo unit will still be operational.

Do not remove key until vehicle is stationary, otherwise the steering wheel lock could engage unexpectedly.

Keep engine turned off and let the vehicle be towed to a workshop ⇨ 223.

## Low fuel

 illuminates or flashes yellow.

## Illuminates

Level in fuel tank is too low.

## Flashes

Fuel used up. Refuel immediately.  
Never run the tank dry.

Refuelling ⇨ 212.

Catalytic converter ⇨ 161.

Bleeding the diesel fuel system  
⇨ 228.

## Immobiliser

 flashes yellow.

Fault in the immobiliser system. The engine cannot be started.

## Exterior light

 illuminates green.

The exterior lights are on ⇨ 128.

## High beam

 illuminates blue.

Illuminated when high beam is on or during headlight flash ⇨ 131.

## High beam assist

 illuminates green.

The high beam assist is activated  
⇨ 129.

## LED headlights

 illuminates or flashes yellow.



## Illuminates

Fault in the system.

Seek the assistance of a workshop.

## Flashes

System is switched to symmetrical low beam.

Control indicator  flashes for approx. 4 seconds after the ignition is switched on as a reminder for symmetrical headlight  131.

## Front fog lights

 illuminates green.

The front fog lights are on  134.

## Rear fog light

 illuminates yellow.

The rear fog light is on  134.

## Cruise control

 illuminates white or green.

### Illuminates white

The system is on.


### Illuminates green

Cruise control is active. Set speed is indicated in the Driver Information Centre.

Cruise control  174.

## Adaptive cruise control

 illuminates white or green.


 illuminates in the Driver Information Centre.

### illuminates white

The system is on.

### illuminates green

Adaptive cruise control is active.

When Adaptive cruise control is on or active,  with the set speed is indicated in the Driver Information Centre.

Adaptive cruise control  177.

### illuminates blue

Adaptive cruise control is overridden, when the accelerator pedal is applied.

When the vehicle is launch from stop by using the accelerator pedal.

## Vehicle detected ahead

 illuminates green or yellow.

### Illuminates green

A vehicle ahead is detected in the same lane.

### Illuminates yellow

The distance to a preceding moving vehicle gets too small or when approaching another vehicle too rapidly.

Adaptive cruise control  177.

Forward collision alert  185.

## Pedestrian detection

 illuminates yellow.

A pedestrian ahead is detected.


## Speed limiter

 illuminates white or green.

### Illuminates white

The system is on.

### Illuminates green

Speed limiter is active. Set speed is indicated near  symbol.

Speed limiter ⇨ 176.

## Traffic sign assistant

Ⓢ displays detected traffic signs as control indicator.

Traffic sign assistant ⇨ 204.

## Door open

⚡ illuminates red.

A door or the tailgate is open.

## Displays

### Driver Information Centre

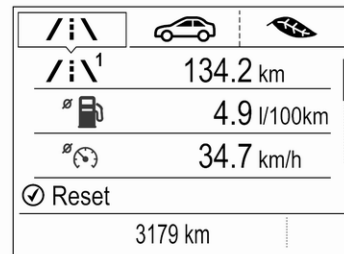
The Driver Information Centre is located in the instrument cluster.

Depending on the version and the instrument cluster, the Driver Information Centre is available as Baselevel display or Uplevel display.

Driver Information Centre indicates depending on the equipment:

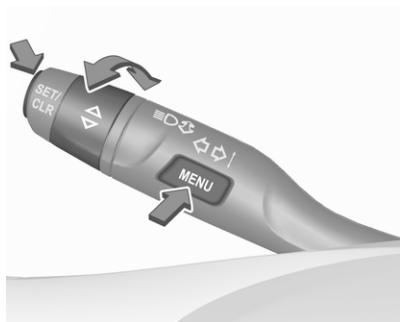
- overall and trip odometer
- vehicle information
- trip / fuel information
- driving economy information
- vehicle and warning messages
- audio and infotainment information
- phone information
- navigation information
- vehicle settings

### Baselevel display



### Selecting menus and functions

The menus and functions can be selected via the buttons on the indicator lever.



Press **MENU** to switch between the main menus or to return from a submenu to the next higher menu level.

Turn the adjuster wheel to select a submenu of the main menu or to set a numeric value.

Press **SET/CLR** to select and confirm a function.

Vehicle and service messages are popped up in the Driver Information Centre if required. Confirm messages by pressing **SET/CLR**.

Vehicle messages 120.

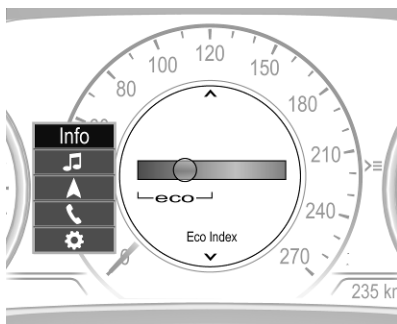
### Main menu

Main menus are:

- Trip / fuel information, displayed by , see description below.
- Vehicle information, displayed by , see description below.
- Eco information, displayed by , see description below.

Some of the displayed functions differ when the vehicle is being driven or at a standstill and some functions are only active when the vehicle is being driven.

### Uplevel display



### Selecting menus and functions

The menus and functions can be selected via the buttons on the right side in the steering wheel.



Press to open main menu page.


Browse through main menu by pressing or .

Confirm a main menu page with .

Press or to browse through submenu pages of the currently selected main menu entry. Use these buttons also to alter a numeric value.

Press to select a function or check a box in a dialogue.



Vehicle and service messages are popped-up in the Driver Information Centre if required. Confirm messages by pressing .

Vehicle messages  120.

### Main menu

Main menus are:

- Trip / fuel information, displayed by **Info**.
- Audio information, displayed by **Audio**.
- Navigation information, displayed by **Navigation**.
- Phone information, displayed by **Phone**.
- Vehicle information, displayed by **Options**.

Some of the displayed functions differ when the vehicle is being driven or at a standstill and some functions are only active when the vehicle is being driven.

Uplevel instrument cluster can be displayed as Sport mode or Tour mode. See **Options** menu, **Display**.

### Info Menu, or

The following list contains all possible Info Menu pages. Some may not be available for your particular vehicle. Depending on the display some functions are symbolised.

- **Speed**
- **Trip 1 / Trip A**, containing:  
**Distance**  
**Fuel Economy / Average Fuel Economy**  
**Average Speed**
- **Trip 2 / Trip B**, containing:  
**Distance**  
**Fuel Economy / Average Fuel Economy**  
**Average Speed**
- **Fuel / Fuel Information**, containing:  
**Fuel Range**  
**Instant Fuel Economy**
- **Oil Life**
- **Tyre Pressure**
- **Timer**
- **Traffic Sign Memory**

- **Following Distance**
- **Driver Assistance**
- **Top Consumers**
- **Economy Trend**
- **ECO Index**
- **AdBlue Level**

On Baselevel display, the pages **Oil Life**, **Tyre Pressure**, **Following Distance**, **Traffic Sign Memory**, **AdBlue Level**, **Tyre Load** and **Speed Warning** are displayed in the Vehicle information menu, select .




### Speed

Digital display of the instantaneous speed.

### Trip 1/A or 2/B

Two independent pages 1/A and 2/B display the current distance, average fuel consumption and average speed since a certain reset.

The distance indicator counts up to a distance of 9,999 km then restarts at 0.

To reset on Baselevel, press  and confirm reset. On Uplevel display, press  and confirm with . This


only resets the values on the current displayed page. The other Trip page stays unaffected.


### **Fuel /Fuel Information**

#### **Fuel Range**

Range is calculated from current fuel tank level and current consumption. The display shows average values.

After refuelling, the range is updated automatically after a brief delay.

When the fuel level in the tank is low, a message appears on the display and control indicator  in the fuel gauge illuminates.

When the tank must be refuelled immediately, a warning message appears and remains on the display. Additionally, control indicator  in the fuel gauge flashes ⇨ 111.

#### **Instant Fuel Economy**

Display of the instantaneous consumption.



#### **Oil Life**





Indicates an estimate of the oil's useful life. The number in % means the remaining of current oil life ⇨ 105.

### **Tyre Pressure**

Checks tyre pressure of all wheels during driving ⇨ 249.

#### **Timer**

Baselevel display: start and stop timer with . To reset, hold  when timer is not running.

Uplevel display: To start or stop timer, press  and  again. To reset, press , choose **Reset** and confirm with .

#### **Traffic Sign Memory**

Displays the detected traffic signs for the current route section ⇨ 204.

#### **Following Distance**

Displays the distance in seconds to a preceding moving vehicle ⇨ 187. If Adaptive cruise control is active this page shows the following distance setting instead.

#### **Driver Assistance**

Displays the status of several driver assistance systems:

Adaptive cruise control ⇨ 177.

Forward collision alert ⇨ 185.

Lane keep assist ⇨ 208.

### **AdBlue Level**

Displays the level of the AdBlue tank ⇨ 161.

### **Eco information menu,**

- **Top Consumers**
- **Economy Trend**
- **ECO Index**

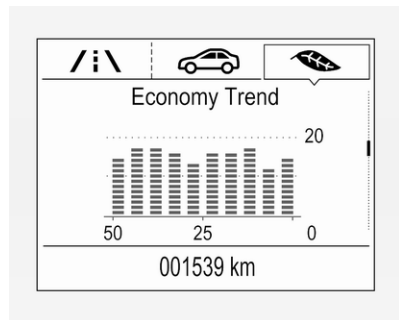
On Uplevel display the pages **Top Consumers**, **Economy Trend** and **ECO Index** are displayed in the Info Menu, see above.

#### **Top Consumers**

List of top comfort consumers currently switched on is displayed in descending order. Fuel saving potential is indicated.

During sporadic driving conditions, the engine will activate the heated rear window automatically to increase the engine load. In this event, the heated rear window is indicated as one of the top consumers, without activation by the driver.

## Economy Trend



Displays the average consumption development over a distance of 50 km. Filled segments display the consumption in 5 km steps and show the effect of topography or driving behaviour on fuel consumption.

## ECO Index

The average fuel consumption is indicated on an economic scale. For economical driving, adapt driving style to keep the indicator within the green area. The more the indicator moves towards red, the higher is the

fuel consumption. Simultaneously the average consumption value is indicated.

Depending on vehicle version, the Eco Index shows values referring to trip odometer page A/1 or the current driving cycle. In the last case, the indicator is reset when ignition is switched on the next time.

## Audio menu 🎵

Enables browsing for music, selecting from favourites or changing the audio source.

For further information, see Infotainment manual.

## Phone menu ☎

Enables managing and performing of phone calls, scrolling through contacts or operating hands-free phoning.

For further information, see Infotainment manual.

## Navigation menu ▲

Enables route guidance.

For further information, see Infotainment manual.

## Vehicle information menu, 🚗, Options or ⚙

The following list contains all possible Options Menu pages. Some may not be available for your particular vehicle. Depending on the display some functions are symbolised.

- Units
- Display
- Info Page Options
- Home Page Options
- Adaptive Cruise
- Speed Warning
- Tyre Load
- Gauges
- Software Information
- AdBlue Level

## Units

Select display unit system: imperial or metric.

## Display

Press ► and select Sport or Touring mode. Sport mode includes more vehicle information, Tour mode includes more media information.

This setting is only available with Uplevel display.

## Info Page Options

A list of all pages in the Info Menu is displayed, see above. Select the pages to be displayed in the Info Menu. Selected pages have a ☒.

Non viewable functions have a blank checkbox.

## Home Page Options

Select, which values are shown on the Driver Information Center home page, e.g. speed or fuel range.

## Adaptive Cruise

Activates or deactivates adaptive cruise control ⇨ 177.

## Speed Warning

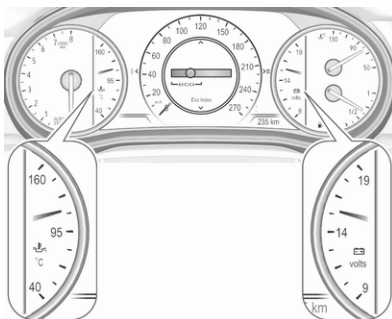
The speed warning page allows you to set a speed that you do not want to exceed.

Speed limit can only be set when speed warning is enabled. Once the speed is set, this feature can be turned off by pressing ✓ while viewing this page. If the selected speed limit is exceeded, a pop-up warning is displayed with a chime.

## Tyre Load

The tyre pressure category according to the actual tyre inflation pressure can be selected ⇨ 249.

## Gauges



- **Oil Temperature**

Displays engine oil temperature in degrees Celsius.

- **Battery Voltage**

Displays the vehicle battery voltage. During engine running voltage can vary between 12 V and 15.5 V. Temporary voltage below 12 V is possible when high electrical load is used.

- **AdBlue**

Displays the level of the Adblue tank ⇨ 161.

- **IFE-AFE**

Displays both instantaneous and average fuel economy.

- **Fuel Range**

Displays average remaining distance with remaining fuel in the tank.

- **Blank Page**

Displays a blank gauge.

## Software information

Displays the open source software information.

## Info Display

The Info Display is located in the instrument panel near the instrument cluster.

Depending on the vehicle configuration, the vehicle has one of the following Infotainment systems:

- **Multimedia**  
or
- **Multimedia Navi**  
or
- **Multimedia Navi Pro**

The Info Display can indicate:

- outside temperature ⇨ 95
- Infotainment system, see description in the Infotainment manual
- climate control settings ⇨ 141
- rear view camera ⇨ 202
- parking assist instructions ⇨ 193
- navigation, see description in the Infotainment manual

- system messages
- settings for vehicle personalisation ⇨ 122

## Multimedia Navi

### Selecting menus and settings

Menus and settings are accessed via the display.





Press  to switch on the display.

Press  to display the home screen.

Touch required menu display icon with the finger.

Touch a respective icon to confirm a selection.

Touch  to return to the next higher menu level.

Press  to return to the home screen.

For further information, see Infotainment manual.

Vehicle personalisation ⇨ 122.

## Multimedia / Multimedia Navi Pro

### Selecting menus and settings

There are three options to operate the display:

- via buttons below the display
- by touching the touchscreen with the finger
- via speech recognition

## Button operation



Press to switch on the display.

Press to display the home screen.

Press **BACK** to exit a menu without changing a setting.

For further information, see Infotainment manual.

## Touchscreen operation

Display must be switched on by pressing . Touch to select the home screen.

Touch required menu display icon or select a function with the finger.

Scroll a longer submenu list with the finger up or down.

Confirm a required function or selection by touching.

Touch to exit a menu with saving of the changed setting.

Touch icon to leave a menu without saving.

Touch to return to the home screen.

For further information, see Infotainment manual.

## Speech recognition

Description see Infotainment manual.

Vehicle personalisation 122.

## Vehicle messages

Messages are indicated in the Driver Information Centre, in some cases together with a warning chime.



On Midlevel display press **SET/CLR** on the indicator lever to confirm a message.



On Uplevel display press ✓ on the steering wheel to confirm a message.

### Vehicle and service messages

The vehicle messages are displayed as text. Follow the instructions given in the messages.

### Messages in the Info Display

Some important messages may appear additionally in the Info Display. Some messages only pop-up for a few seconds.

### Warning chimes

If several warnings appear at the same time, only one warning chime will sound.

### When starting the engine or whilst driving

The warning chime regarding not fastened seat belts has priority over any other warning chime.

- If seat belt is not fastened.
- If a door or the tailgate is not fully closed when starting off.
- If a certain speed is exceeded with parking brake applied.
- If adaptive cruise control deactivates automatically.
- If approaching a vehicle ahead too closely.
- If a programmed speed or speed limit is exceeded.
- If a warning message appears in the Driver Information Centre.
- If the electronic key is not in the passenger compartment.

- If the parking assist detects an object.
- If an unintended lane change occurs.
- If the exhaust filter has reached the maximum filling level.
- If safety function of the power tailgate detects obstacles in the moving area.

### When the vehicle is parked and / or the driver's door is opened

- With exterior lights on.

### During an Autostop

- If the driver's door is opened.
- If any condition for an Autostop is not fulfilled.

### Battery voltage

When the vehicle battery voltage is running low, a warning message will appear in the Driver Information Centre.

1. Switch off any electrical consumers which are not required for a safe drive, e.g. seat heating, heated rear window or other main consumers.
2. Charge the vehicle battery by driving continuously for a while or by using a charging device.

The warning message will disappear after the engine has been started twice without a voltage drop.

If the vehicle battery cannot be recharged, have the cause of the fault remedied by a workshop.

## Vehicle personalisation

The vehicle's behaviour can be personalised by changing the settings in the Info Display.

Some of the personal settings for different drivers can be memorised individually for each vehicle key.

Memorised settings ↗ 25.

Depending on vehicle equipment and country-specific regulations some of the functions described below may not be available.

Some functions are only displayed or active when the engine is running.

### Personal settings

#### Multimedia Navi

Press , select **Settings** and then **Vehicle** on the touchscreen.



In the corresponding submenus the following settings can be changed:

#### Vehicle

- **Climate & Air Quality**

**Auto Fan Max Speed:** Modifies the level of the cabin airflow of the climate control in automatic mode.

**Auto Heated Seats:** Automatically activates the seat heating.

**Auto Defog:** Supports windscreen dehumidification by automatically selecting the necessary settings and automatic air conditioning mode.



**Auto Rear Defog:** Automatically activates heated rear window.

- **Collision / Detection Systems**

**Rear View Camera Guidelines:**  
Activates or deactivates the rear view camera guidelines on the Info Display.

**Forward Collision Alert :**  
Activates or deactivates forward collision alert.

**Auto Collision Preparation:**  
Activates or deactivates the automatic brake functionality of the vehicle in the event of imminent collision danger. The following is selectable: the system will take over brake control, warn by chimes only or is deactivated completely.

**Forward Collision System:**  
Activates or deactivates warning chimes or automatic brake functionality in the event of imminent collision danger.

**Front pedestrian detection:**  
Activates or deactivates warning chimes or automatic brake

functionality of the pedestrian detection system.

**Rear Cross Traffic Alert:**  
Activates or deactivates rear cross traffic alert.

**Park Assist:** Activates or deactivates the parking assist. Activation is selectable with or without attached trailer coupling.

**Go Notifier:** Activates or deactivates the reminder message to drive off when the adaptive cruise control holds the vehicle at standstill.

**Side Blind Zone Alert:** Activates or deactivates side blind zone alert.

- **Comfort and Convenience**

**Auto Memory Recall :** Changes the settings to the recall of memorised settings for power seat adjustment.

**Easy Exit Driver Seat:** Activates or deactivates easy exit function of the power seat.

**Chime Volume:** Changes the volume of warning chimes.

**Reverse Tilt Mirror:** Activates or deactivates the parking assist function of the exterior mirrors.

**Auto Mirror Folding:** Activates or deactivates folding of the exterior mirrors with the remote control.

**Personalization By Driver:**  
Activates or deactivates the personalisation function.

**Rain Sense Wipers:** Activates or deactivates automatic wiping with rain sensor.

**Auto Wipe in Reverse Gear:**  
Activates or deactivates automatic switching on of the rear window wiper when reverse gear is engaged.

**Extended Hill Start Assist:**  
Toggles between hill start assist and extended hold hill start assist

- **Lighting**

**Vehicle Locator Lights:** Activates or deactivates the entry lighting.

**Exit Lighting:** Activates or deactivates and changes the duration of exit lighting.

**Left or Right Hand Traffic :**

Changes between lighting for left or right-hand traffic.

**Adaptive Forward Lighting :**

Changes the settings of the functions of the LED headlights.

- **Power Door Locks**

**Unlocked Door Anti Lock Out:**

Activates or deactivates the door locking function while a door is open.

**Auto Door Lock:** Activates or deactivates the automatic door locking function after driving off.

**Delayed Door Lock:** Activates or deactivates the delayed door locking function. This feature delays the actual locking of the doors until all doors are closed.

- **Remote Lock, Unlock, Start**

**Remote Unlock Light Feedback:**

Activates or deactivates the hazard warning flasher feedback whilst unlocking.

**Remote Lock Feedback:**

Changes what kind of feedback is given when locking the vehicle.

**Remote Door Unlock:** Changes the configuration to unlock only the driver's door or the whole vehicle whilst unlocking.

**Relock Remotely Unlocked**

**Doors:** Activates or deactivates the automatic relock function after unlocking without opening the vehicle.

**Remote Window Operation:**

Activates or deactivates the operation of power windows with electronic key.

**Passive Door Unlock:** Changes the configuration to unlock only the driver's door or the whole vehicle whilst unlocking.



**Passive Door Lock :** Activates or deactivates the passive locking function. This feature locks the vehicle automatically after several seconds if all doors have been closed and an electronic key has been removed from the vehicle.

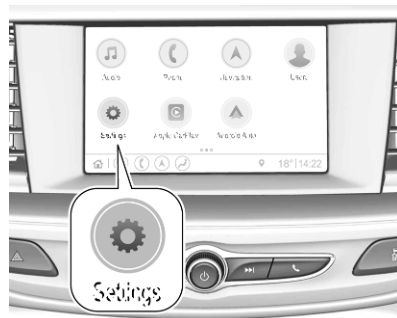
**Remote Left in Vehicle Alert:**

Activates or deactivates the warning chime when the

electronic key remains in the vehicle.

**Personal settings****Multimedia / Multimedia Navi Pro**

Press , then select the  icon.



The **Settings** menu contains the following submenus, which can be selected in the upper menu bar:

- **System**
- **Apps**
- **Vehicle**
- **Personal**

## System

Select **Language** to open a list of available languages for the Info Display and Driver Information Center. Select desired language.

## Apps

See Infotainment manual.

## Vehicle

- **Climate and Air Quality**

**Auto Fan Speed:** Modifies the level of the cabin airflow of the climate control in automatic mode.

**Auto heated seats:** Automatically activates the seat heating.

**Auto Demist:** Supports windscreen dehumidification by automatically selecting the necessary settings and automatic air conditioning mode.

**Auto Rear Demist:** Automatically activates heated rear window.

- **Collision/Detection Systems**

**Forward Collision System:** Deactivates the system completely, activates warning

chimes only or warning chimes in combination with automatic brake functionality.

**Front Pedestrian Detection:**

Activates warning chimes only or warning chimes in combination with automatic brake functionality or deactivates the system completely.

**Adaptive Cruise Go Notifier:**

Activates or deactivates the reminder message to drive off when the adaptive cruise control holds the vehicle at standstill.

**Lane Change Alert:** Activates or deactivates side blind zone alert.

**Park Assist:** Activates or deactivates the parking assist. Activation is selectable with or without attached trailer coupling.

**Rear Cross Traffic Alert:**

Activates or deactivates rear cross traffic alert.

- **Comfort and Convenience**

**Auto Memory Recall:** Changes the settings to the recall of memorised settings for power seat adjustment.

**Easy Exit Driver's Seat:** Activates or deactivates easy exit function of the power seat.

**Chime Volume:** Changes the volume of warning chimes.

**Handsfree Liftgate/Boot Lid**

**Control:** Changes the hands-free function settings of the power tailgate.

**Reverse Tilt Mirror:** Changes the parking assist function of the exterior mirrors.

**Auto Mirror Folding:** Activates or deactivates folding of the exterior mirrors with the remote control.

**Personalisation by Driver:**

Activates or deactivates the personalisation function, depending on which key is being used.

**Rain Sense Wipers:** Activates or deactivates automatic wiping with rain sensor.

**Auto Wipe in Reverse Gear:**

Activates or deactivates automatic switching on of the rear window wiper when reverse gear is engaged.

**Extended Hill Start Assist:**

Toggles between hill start assist and extended hold hill start assist

- **Lighting**

**Vehicle Locator Lights:** Activates or deactivates the entry lighting.

**Exit Lighting:** Activates or deactivates and changes the duration of exit lighting.

**Left or Right-Hand Traffic:**

Changes between lighting for left or right-hand traffic.

**Adaptive Forward Lighting:**

Changes the settings of the LED headlights.

- **Power Door Locks**

**Open Door Anti-Lock Out:**

Activates or deactivates the door locking function while a door is open.

**Auto Door Lock:** Activates or deactivates the automatic door locking function after driving off.

**Delayed Door Lock:** Activates or deactivates the delayed door locking function. This feature

delays the actual locking of the doors until all doors are closed.

- **Remote Lock, Unlock and Start Remote Unlock Light Feedback:** Activates or deactivates the hazard warning flasher feedback whilst unlocking.

**Remote Lock Feedback:**

Changes what kind of feedback is given when locking the vehicle.

**Remote Door Unlock:** Changes the configuration to unlock only the driver's door or the whole vehicle whilst unlocking.

**Relock Doors Unlocked**

**Remotely:** Activates or deactivates the automatic relock function after unlocking without opening the vehicle.

**Remote Window Operation:**

Activates or deactivates the operation of power windows with electronic key.

**Passive Door Unlock:** Changes the configuration to unlock only the driver's door or the whole vehicle whilst unlocking.

**Passive Door Lock:** Activates or deactivates the passive locking function. This feature locks the vehicle automatically after several seconds if all doors have been closed and an electronic key has been removed from the vehicle.

**Remote Left in Vehicle Alert:**

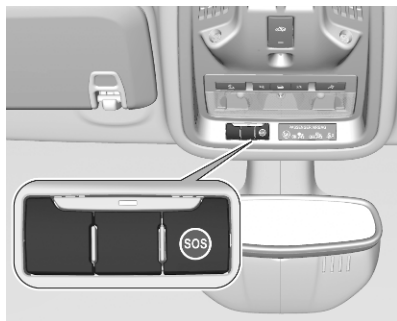
Activates or deactivates the warning chime when the electronic key remains in the vehicle.

**Personal**

See Infotainment manual.

## Telematics service

### Emergency call



### Emergency call function

Vehicles featuring the emergency call function are equipped with a red **SOS** button in the overhead console.

The emergency call function will establish a connection to the nearest public safety answering point (PSAP). A minimum set of data including vehicle and location information will be sent to the PSAP.

#### Note

Establishing an emergency call may not be possible in areas without sufficient network availability or due to hardware damage during an accident.

#### Automatic crash notification

In case of an accident with airbag deployment, an automatic emergency call is established and an automatic crash notification will be transmitted to the next public safety answering point.

#### Emergency assistance

In case of an emergency you can also manually place an emergency call by pressing the red **SOS** button for more than two seconds. The LED flashes to confirm that a connection to the nearest PSAP is being established. The LED illuminates steadily as long as the call is active.

Pressing the **SOS** button immediately a second time will terminate the call. The LED switches off.

## Lighting

|                                 |            |
|---------------------------------|------------|
| <b>Exterior lighting</b> .....  | <b>128</b> |
| Light switch .....              | 128        |
| Automatic light control .....   | 129        |
| High beam assist .....          | 129        |
| High beam .....                 | 131        |
| Headlight flash .....           | 131        |
| Headlight range adjustment .... | 131        |
| Headlights when driving         |            |
| abroad .....                    | 131        |
| Daytime running lights .....    | 132        |
| LED headlights .....            | 132        |
| Hazard warning flashers .....   | 133        |
| Turn lights .....               | 134        |
| Front fog lights .....          | 134        |
| Rear fog light .....            | 134        |
| Parking lights .....            | 135        |
| Reversing lights .....          | 135        |
| Misted light covers .....       | 135        |
| <b>Interior lighting</b> .....  | <b>135</b> |
| Instrument panel illumination   |            |
| control .....                   | 135        |
| Interior lights .....           | 136        |
| Reading lights .....            | 136        |
| Sun visor lights .....          | 136        |



|                                   |            |
|-----------------------------------|------------|
| <b>Lighting features</b> .....    | <b>137</b> |
| Centre console lighting .....     | 137        |
| Entry lighting .....              | 137        |
| Exit lighting .....               | 137        |
| Battery discharge protection .... | 138        |

## Exterior lighting

### Light switch



Turn light switch:

- AUTO** : automatic light control  
switches automatically  
between daytime running  
light and headlight
-  : sidelights
-  : headlights

When switching on the ignition,  
automatic light control is active.

Control indicator   111.

## Tail lights

Tail lights are illuminated together with low/high beam and sidelights.

## Automatic light control



When the automatic light control function is switched on and the engine is running, the system switches between daytime running lights and headlights automatically depending on the external lighting conditions and information given by the rain sensor system.

Daytime running light ⇨ 132.

## Automatic headlight activation

During poor lighting conditions headlights are switched on.

Additionally, headlights are switched on if the windscreen wipers have been activated for several wipes.

LED headlights ⇨ 132.

## Tunnel detection

When a tunnel is entered headlights are switched on immediately.

## High beam assist

The camera in the windscreen detects the lights of oncoming or preceding vehicles. Once activated, high beam assist remains active and switches high beam on and off automatically. The latest setting of the high beam assist will remain after the ignition is switched on again.

It switches automatically to low beam when:

- Driving in urban areas.
- It is foggy or snowy.
- Fog lights are switched on.

If there are no restrictions detected, the system switches back to high beam.

This feature allows the high beam to function as main driving light at night.



Each LED on right or left side is triggered or faded out particularly according to the traffic situation. This gives the best light distribution without dazzling other road users.

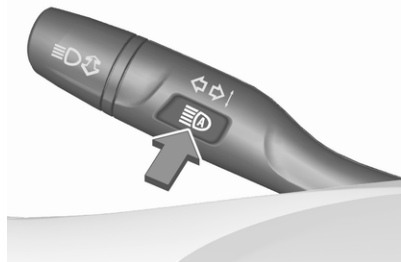
High beam is switched on automatically at a speed above 50 km/h. High beam is switched off at a speed below 35 km/h, but high beam assist remains active.


## Motorway mode

High beam assist includes a special motorway mode. When driving faster than 105 km/h on motorways for a certain time, the light beam becomes smaller to avoid dazzling of oncoming traffic.

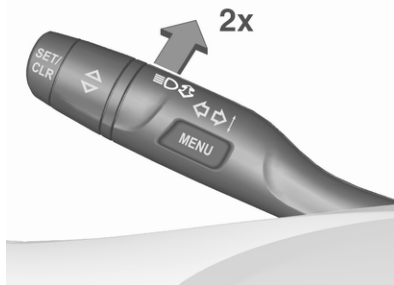
### Activation

Indicator lever with  button









Activate high beam assist by pressing .

### Indicator lever with or without MENU button



Activate high beam assist by pushing the indicator lever twice.

The green control indicator  illuminates continuously when the high beam assist is activated, the blue one  illuminates when high beam is on.

Control indicator   111,  .

### Deactivation


#### Indicator lever with or without MENU button


If high beam assist is active and high beam is on, pull the lever once to deactivate high beam assist.

If high beam assist is active and high beam is off, push the lever twice to deactivate high beam assist.

Pushing the indicator lever to activate manual high beam will also deactivate high beam assist.

#### Indicator lever with button

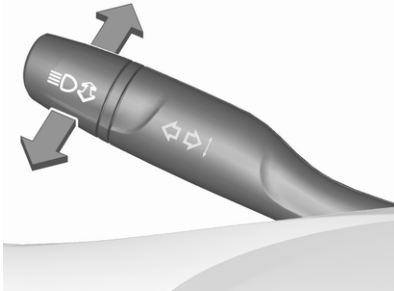
If high beam assist is active and high beam is on, press  once or pull indicator lever once to deactivate high beam assist.

If high beam assist is active and high beam is off, press  once to deactivate high beam assist.

Pushing the indicator lever to activate manual high beam will also deactivate high beam assist.



## High beam



Push lever to switch from low to high beam.

Pull lever to deactivate high beam.

High beam assist ⇨ 129.

## Headlight flash

To activate the headlight flash, pull lever.

Pulling lever deactivates high beam.

LED headlights ⇨ 132.

## Headlight range adjustment

### Manual headlight range adjustment

Headlight range can be adjusted manually if vehicle is equipped with halogen headlights. LED headlights are adjusted automatically.

Dynamic automatic headlight levelling ⇨ 132.



To adapt headlight range to the vehicle load to prevent dazzling: turn thumb wheel ⇨ to required position.

0 : front seats occupied

1 : all seats occupied

2 : all seats occupied and load compartment laden

3 : driver's seat occupied and load compartment laden

## Headlights when driving abroad

When driving in countries where traffic drives on the opposite side of the road, the following must be done for the different headlight versions:

### Vehicles with halogen headlights

The headlights do not have to be adjusted.

### Vehicles with LED headlights

Consult a workshop to adjust the headlights.

### Vehicles with Matrix-LED headlights

Headlights can be set for driving on the opposite side of the road in the vehicle personalisation menu via the Info Display.

Select the relevant setting in **Settings** ➤ **Vehicle**.

Info Display ⇨ 119.

Vehicle personalisation ⇨ 122.

Every time the ignition is switched on, ⚡ flashes for approx. 4 seconds as a reminder.

To deactivate, use the same procedure as described above. ⚡ will not flash when function is deactivated.

Control indicator ⚡ ⇨ 111.

## Daytime running lights

Daytime running lights increases visibility of the vehicle during daylight.

They are switched on automatically during daytime when engine is running.

The system switches between daytime running lights and headlights automatically, depending on the lighting conditions.

Automatic light control ⇨ 129.

## LED headlights

LED and Matrix-LED headlights for low and high beam ensure better visibility under all conditions.

Matrix-LED headlight contains beyond that a variety of particular LEDs in each headlight which enables the control of different lighting programmes.

Light distribution and intensity of light are variably triggered depending on the lighting conditions, road type and driving situation. The vehicle adapts the headlights automatically to the situation to enable optimal light performance for the driver. Some functions of the LED headlights can be deactivated or activated in the vehicle personalisation menu. Select the relevant setting in **Settings** ➤ **Vehicle** in the Info Display.

Vehicle personalisation ⇨ 122.

The following lighting functions are available with light switch in position **AUTO** or **⚡**.

## Town light



Activated automatically at a speed up to approx. 55 km/h and in situations with exterior ambient light. The light is wide and symmetrical. A special beam pattern is designed to avoid glare for other road users.

## Country light



Activated automatically at a speed above approx. 55 km/h when driving in rural areas. The illumination of the current lane and the side of the road is improved. Oncoming and preceding vehicles are not dazzled.

## Curve light



Particular LEDs, based on steering angle and speed, are additionally triggered to improve lighting in curves. This function is activated at speeds from 40 km/h to 70 km/h and reacts to steering angle.

## Cornering light



When turning off, depending on the steering angle and the turn lights, particular LEDs are triggered which illuminate the direction of travel. It is activated up to a speed of 40 km/h.

## Reverse parking function

To assist driver's orientation when parking, both corner lights and reversing light illuminate when headlights are on and reverse gear is engaged. They remain illuminated for a short time after disengaging reverse gear or until driving faster than 7 km/h in a forward gear.

## Automatic headlight levelling

To prevent oncoming traffic from being dazzled, headlight levelling is automatically adjusted based on inclination information measured by front and rear axle, acceleration or deceleration and vehicle speed.

## Headlights when driving abroad

⇨ 131.

## Fault in LED headlight system

When the system detects a failure in the LED headlight system, it selects a preset position to avoid dazzling of oncoming traffic. A warning is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

## Hazard warning flashers

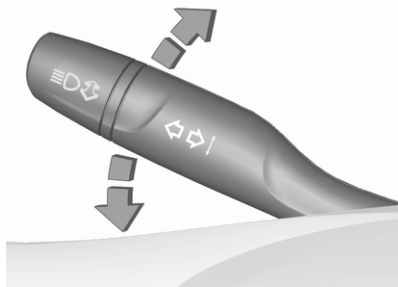
Operated by pressing .



The illustrations show different versions.

In the event of an accident with airbag deployment, the hazard warning flashers are activated automatically.

## Turn lights



up : right turn light  
down : left turn light

A resistance point can be felt when moving the lever.

Constant flashing is activated when the lever is being moved beyond the resistance point. It is deactivated when the steering wheel is moved in the opposite direction or lever is manually moved back to its neutral position.

Activate temporary flashing by holding the lever just before the resistance point. Turn lights will flash until lever is being released.

To activate three flashes, tap the lever briefly without passing the resistance point.

With a trailer connected, turn light flashes six times and tone frequency changes.

## Front fog lights



Operated by pressing #D.

Light switch in position **AUTO**: switching on front fog lights will switch headlights on automatically.

## Rear fog light



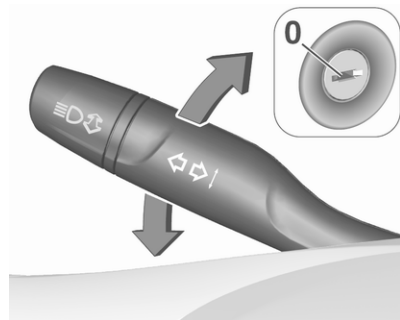
Operated by pressing D#.

Light switch in position **AUTO**: switching on rear fog light will switch headlights on automatically.

Light switch in position D#: rear fog light can only be switched on with front fog lights.

The vehicle rear fog light is deactivated when towing a trailer or a plug is connected with the socket, e. g. when a bicycle carrier is used.

## Parking lights



When the vehicle is parked, the parking lights on one side can be activated:

1. Switch off ignition.
2. Move the indicator lever all the way up (right parking lights) or down (left parking lights).

Confirmed by a signal and the corresponding turn lights control indicator.

## Reversing lights

The reversing light comes on when the ignition is on and reverse gear is selected.

## Misted light covers

The inside of the light housing may mist up briefly in poor, wet and cold weather conditions, in heavy rain or after washing. The mist disappears quickly by itself; to help switch on the headlights.

## Interior lighting

### Instrument panel illumination control



Brightness of the following lights can be adjusted in position **AUTO** when the light sensor detects night conditions, or in position **D** or **OFF**.

- instrument panel illumination
- Info Display
- illuminated switches and operation elements

Turn thumb wheel  and hold until the desired brightness is obtained.




Interior lights

During entry and exit of the vehicle, the front and rear courtesy lights automatically switch on and then off after a delay.

**Note**  
In the event of an accident with airbag deployment the courtesy lights are turned on automatically.

Front courtesy light

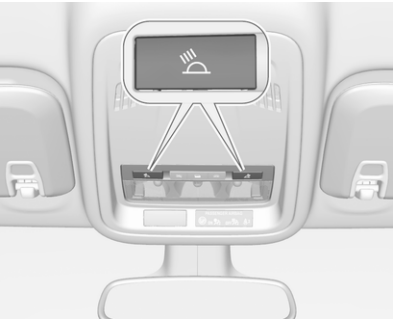




-  : automatic switching on and off
- press  : on
- press  : off

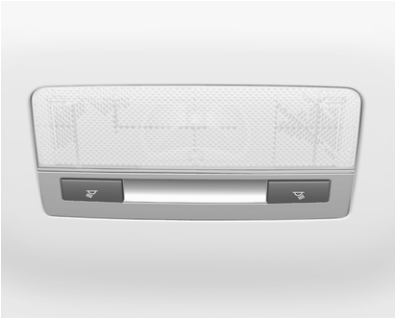
Rear courtesy lights

Illuminate in conjunction with the front courtesy light.

Reading lights



Operated by pressing  and  in the courtesy lights.



Sun visor lights

Illuminates when the cover is opened.

## Lighting features

### Centre console lighting

Spotlight incorporated in the interior lighting comes on when headlights are switched on.

### Entry lighting

#### Welcome lighting

The following lights are switched on for a short time by unlocking the vehicle with the radio remote control:

- headlights
- tail lights
- number plate lights
- instrument panel light
- interior lights

Some functions are only operable when it is dark outside to facilitate locating the vehicle.

The lighting switches off immediately when the ignition is switched on.

Starting off ⇨ 18.

This function can be activated or deactivated in the vehicle personalisation.

Select the relevant setting in **Settings** ➤ **Vehicle** in the Info Display.

Info Display ⇨ 119.

Vehicle personalisation ⇨ 122.

The settings can be saved for the key being used ⇨ 25.

The following lights will additionally switch on when the driver's door is opened:

- illumination of some switches
- Driver Information Centre
- door pocket lights

### Exit lighting

The following lights switch on if the key is removed from the ignition switch:

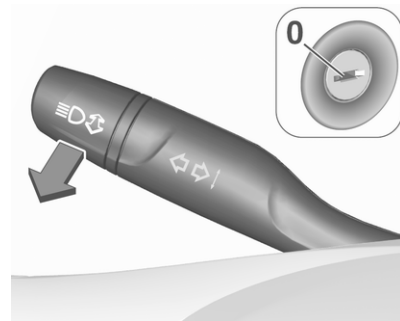
- interior lights
- instrument panel light

They will switch off automatically after a delay. This function works only in the dark.

### Path lighting

Headlights, tail lights and number plate lights illuminate the surrounding area for an adjustable time after leaving the vehicle.

#### Activating Halogen headlights



1. Switch off the ignition.
2. Remove the ignition key.
3. Open the driver's door.
4. Pull the indicator lever.
5. Close the driver's door.

If the driver's door is not closed, the lights switch off after 2 minutes.

Exit lighting is switched off immediately if the indicator lever is pulled while the driver's door is open.

### **LED headlights**

Path lighting is activated, when the ignition is switched off and the driver's door is opened.

This function can be activated or deactivated in the vehicle personalisation.

Select the relevant setting in **Settings** ➤ **Vehicle** in the Info Display.

Info Display ➤ 119.

Vehicle personalisation ➤ 122.

The settings can be saved for the key being used ➤ 25.

## **Battery discharge protection**

### **Vehicle battery state of charge function**

The function guarantees longest vehicle battery life via a generator with controllable power output and optimised power distribution.

To prevent discharge of the vehicle battery when driving, the following systems are reduced automatically in two stages and finally switched off:

- auxiliary heater
- heated rear window and mirrors
- heated steering wheel
- heated mirrors
- heated seats
- fan

In the second stage, a message which confirms the activation of the vehicle battery discharge protection will be displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

### **Switching off electric lights**

To prevent discharge of the vehicle battery when the ignition is switched off, some interior lights are switched off automatically after some time.



# Climate control

|  |            |
|--|------------|
| <b>Climate control systems</b> .....     | <b>139</b> |
| Air conditioning system .....            | 139        |
| Electronic climate control system .....  | 141        |
| Auxiliary heater .....                   | 147        |
| <b>Air vents</b> .....                   | <b>147</b> |
| Adjustable air vents .....               | 147        |
| Fixed air vents .....                    | 147        |
| <b>Maintenance</b> .....                 | <b>148</b> |
| Air intake .....                         | 148        |
| Air conditioning regular operation ..... | 148        |
| Service .....                            | 148        |

## Climate control systems

### Air conditioning system



Illustration shows functions which may not be available for your particular vehicle.

Controls for:

- Fan speed
- Temperature
- Air distribution , and
- Air conditioning **A/C**
- Demisting and defrosting FRONT
- Air recirculation

- Heated rear window and exterior mirrors REAR

- Heated seats

Heated rear window ↗ 45.

Heated exterior mirrors ↗ 41.

Heated seats ↗ 56.

Ventilated seats ↗ 56.

Heated steering wheel ↗ 91.

### Cooling A/C



Press **A/C** to switch on cooling. Activation is indicated by the LED in the button. Cooling is only functional when the engine is running and climate control fan is switched on.

Press **A/C** again to switch off cooling. The air conditioning system cools and dehumidifies (dries) as soon as the outside temperature is slightly above the freezing point. Therefore condensation may form and drip from under the vehicle.


If no cooling or drying is required, switch off the cooling system for fuel saving reasons.


Activated cooling may inhibit Autostops.

Stop-start system ⇨ 155.

### Air recirculation system




Press  to activate air recirculation mode, LED is indicated.

Press  again to deactivate air recirculation mode.

### Warning



The exchange of fresh air is reduced in air recirculation mode. In operation without cooling the air humidity increases, so the windows may mist up from inside. The quality of the passenger compartment air deteriorates, which may cause the vehicle occupants to feel drowsy.

In warm and very humid ambient air conditions, the windscreen may mist up from outside when cold air is directed towards it. If windscreen mists up from outside, activate windscreen wiper and deactivate .

### Maximum cooling





Briefly open the windows so that hot air can disperse quickly.



- Switch on cooling **A/C**.
- Press  for air recirculation system on.
- Press  for air distribution.
- Set temperature control to coldest level.
- Set fan speed to highest level.
- Open all vents.



## Demisting and defrosting the windows





- Press : the air distribution is directed towards the windscreen.
- Set fan speed to highest level.
- Set temperature control to warmest level.
- Switch on heated rear window .
- Open side air vents as required and direct them towards the door windows.

### Note

If  is pressed while the engine is running, an Autostop will be inhibited until  is pressed again.

If  is pressed with the fan switched on and the engine running, an Autostop will be inhibited until  is pressed again or until the fan is switched off.

If  is pressed while the engine is in an Autostop, the engine will restart automatically.

If  is pressed with the fan switched on while the engine is in an Autostop, the engine will restart automatically.

Stop-start system ➔ 155.

## Electronic climate control system







The dual zone climate control allows different temperatures for driver side and front passenger side.







In automatic mode, temperature, fan speed and air distribution are regulated automatically.



Illustration shows functions which may not be available for your particular vehicle.

Controls for:

- Rotary knob for temperature on driver side
- Rotary knob for temperature on passenger side
- Climate control **ON/OFF**
- Heated windscreen 
- Air conditioning **A/C**
- Manual air recirculation 
- Air distribution ,  and 
- Demisting and defrosting 

- Heated rear window and exterior mirrors  REAR
- Dual zone temperature synchronisation **SYNC**
- Heated seats 
- Fan speed increase  and decrease 
- Ventilated seats 
- Steering wheel heating 
- Automatic mode **AUTO**

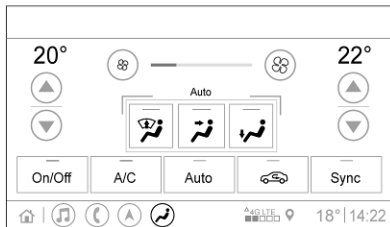
Heated rear window  ↗ 45.

Heated exterior mirrors  ↗ 41.

Heated seats  ↗ 56.

Ventilated seats  ↗ 56.

Heated steering wheel  ↗ 91.



Each change of settings is shown in the Info Display for a few seconds. The electronic climate control system is only fully operational when the engine is running.

## Automatic mode AUTO



Basic settings for automatic control with maximum comfort:

- Press **AUTO**, the air distribution and fan speed are regulated automatically.
- Open all air vents to allow optimised air distribution in automatic mode.

- Press **A/C** to switch on optimal cooling and demisting. The LED in the button illuminates to indicate activation.
- Set the preselected temperatures for driver and front passenger using the left and right rotary knob. Recommended temperature is 22 °C.

The fan speed regulation in automatic mode can be changed in the Settings menu.

Vehicle personalisation ⇨ 122.

### Temperature preselection



Set temperatures to the desired value. The knob on the passenger side changes the temperature for the passenger side. The knob on the driver's side changes the temperature for the driver's side or for both sides depending on activation of synchronisation **SYNC**.

The selected temperature is indicated in the display of the knob.

If the minimum temperature **Lo** is set, the climate control system runs at maximum cooling, if cooling **A/C** is switched on.

If the maximum temperature **Hi** is set, the climate control system runs at maximum heating.

#### Note

If **A/C** is switched on, reducing the set cabin temperature can cause the engine to restart from an Autostop or inhibit an Autostop.

Stop-start system ⇨ 155.





### Dual zone temperature synchronisation SYNC

Press **SYNC** to link passenger side temperature setting to the driver side. The LED in the button illuminates to indicate activation.

When passenger side settings will be adjusted, synchronisation is deactivated and the LED extinguishes.

## Demisting and defrosting the windows







- Press . The LED in the button illuminates to indicate activation.
- Temperature and air distribution are set automatically and the fan runs at high speed.
- Switch on heated rear window .
- Switch on heated windscreen  if available.
- To return to previous mode: press  to return to automatic mode: press **AUTO**.


Settings of automatic rear window heating can be changed in the Settings menu in the Info Display.


Vehicle personalisation ⇨ 122.

### Note

If  is pressed while the engine is running, an Autostop will be inhibited until  is pressed again.

If  is pressed with the fan switched on and the engine running, an Autostop will be inhibited until  is pressed again or until the fan is switched off.

If  is pressed while the engine is in an Autostop, the engine will restart automatically.

If  is pressed with the fan switched on while the engine is in an Autostop, the engine will restart automatically.

Stop-start system ⇨ 155.

## Deactivation or activation of Electronic climate control system ON/OFF





Cooling, fan and automatic mode can be switched off by pressing **ON/OFF**. When the system is deactivated, the LED in the button **ON/OFF** is not illuminated.

Activation by pressing **ON/OFF** again, **A/C** or **AUTO**. The LED in the button illuminates to indicate activation.

### Version with heated windscreen



If the vehicle is equipped with heated windscreen, button **ON/OFF** is replaced by button .



Climate control system will then be switched off by the left . Switch on by pressing right .

### Manual settings

Climate control system settings can be changed by activating the buttons and rotary knobs as described below. Changing a setting will deactivate the automatic mode.

### Fan speed



Press left  to decrease or right  to increase fan speed. The fan speed is indicated by the number of LEDs in the button.

Pressing the left  for longer: fan and cooling are switched off.




Pressing the right  for longer: the fan runs at maximum speed.

To return to automatic mode: Press **AUTO**.

### Air distribution



Press the appropriate button for the desired adjustment. The LED in the button illuminates to indicate activation.

-  : to windscreen and front door windows (air conditioning is activated in the background to help preventing windows from fogging)
-  : to head area and rear seats via adjustable air vents
-  : to front and rear foot well and windscreen

All combinations are possible.

Return to automatic air distribution: press **AUTO**.

## Cooling A/C



Press **A/C** to switch on cooling. The LED in the button illuminates to indicate activation. Cooling is only functional when the engine is running and climate control fan is switched on.

Press **A/C** again to switch off cooling.

The air conditioning system cools and dehumidifies (dries) when outside temperature is above a specific level. Therefore condensation may form and drip from under the vehicle.

If no cooling or drying is required, switch off the cooling system for fuel saving reasons.

When the cooling system is switched off, no engine restart will be requested by the climate control system during an Autostop.


Exception: defrost system is activated and outside temperature above 0 °C requests a restart.


Stop-start system ↗ 155.

The display will indicate **A/C ON** when cooling is activated or **A/C OFF** when the cooling is deactivated.

## Manual air recirculation




Press  to activate the air recirculation mode. The LED in the button illuminates to indicate activation.

Press  again to deactivate recirculation mode.

## Warning

The exchange of fresh air is reduced in air recirculation mode. In operation without cooling the air humidity increases, so the windows may mist up from inside. The quality of the passenger compartment air deteriorates, which may cause the vehicle occupants to feel drowsy.

In warm and very humid ambient air conditions, the windscreen may mist up from outside, when cold air is directed towards it. If windscreen mists up from outside, activate windscreen wiper and deactivate .



## Automatic air recirculation

An air humidity sensor switches automatically to external air if internal air humidity is too high.

## Basic settings

Some settings can be changed in the Settings menu in the Info Display.

Vehicle personalisation ⇨ 122.

## Auxiliary heater

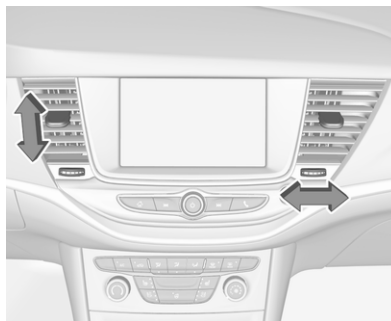
### Air heater

Quickheat is an electric auxiliary air heater which automatically warms up the passenger compartment more quickly.

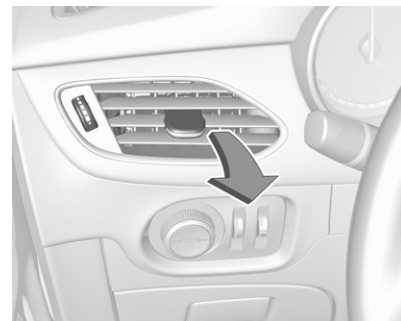
## Air vents

### Adjustable air vents

At least one air vent must be open while cooling is on.



To open the vent, turn the adjuster wheel towards the bigger ■ symbol. Adjust the air amount at the vent outlet by turning the adjuster wheel.



Direct the flow of air by tilting and swivelling the slats.

To close the vent, turn the adjuster wheel towards the smaller ■ symbol.

### Warning

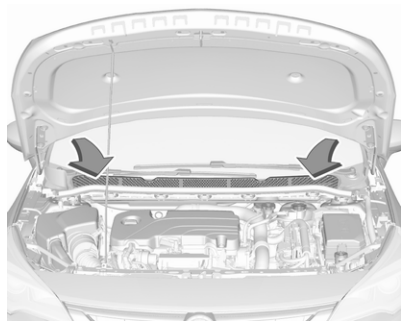
Do not attach any objects to the slats of the air vents. Risk of damage and injury in case of an accident.

## Fixed air vents

Additional air vents are located beneath the windscreen and door windows and in the foot wells.

## Maintenance

### Air intake



The air intake in front of the windscreen in the engine compartment must be kept clear to allow air intake. Remove any leaves, dirt or snow.

### Air conditioning regular operation

In order to ensure continuously efficient performance, cooling must be operated for a few minutes once a month, irrespective of the weather and time of year. Operation with cooling is not possible when the outside temperature is too low.

### Service

For optimal cooling performance, it is recommended to annually check the climate control system, starting three years after initial vehicle registration, including:

- functionality and pressure test
- heating functionality
- leakage check
- check of drive belts
- cleaning of condenser and evaporator drainage
- performance check

# Driving and operating

|                                     |            |
|-------------------------------------|------------|
| <b>Driving hints</b> .....          | <b>150</b> |
| Control of the vehicle .....        | 150        |
| Steering .....                      | 150        |
| <b>Starting and operating</b> ..... | <b>150</b> |
| New vehicle running-in .....        | 150        |
| Ignition switch positions .....     | 150        |
| Power button .....                  | 151        |
| Retained power off .....            | 153        |
| Starting the engine .....           | 153        |
| Overrun cut-off .....               | 155        |
| Stop-start system .....             | 155        |
| Parking .....                       | 158        |
| <b>Engine exhaust</b> .....         | <b>159</b> |
| Exhaust filter .....                | 159        |
| Catalytic converter .....           | 161        |
| AdBlue .....                        | 161        |
| <b>Automatic transmission</b> ..... | <b>164</b> |
| Transmission display .....          | 164        |
| Gear selection .....                | 165        |
| Manual mode .....                   | 166        |
| Electronic driving programmes ..... | 166        |
| Fault .....                         | 167        |
| Interruption of power supply ....   | 167        |

|  |            |
|--|------------|
| <b>Manual transmission</b> .....       | <b>168</b> |
| <b>Brakes</b> .....                    | <b>168</b> |
| Antilock brake system .....            | 168        |
| Parking brake .....                    | 169        |
| Brake assist .....                     | 171        |
| Hill start assist .....                | 171        |
| <b>Ride control systems</b> .....      | <b>171</b> |
| Traction Control system .....          | 171        |
| Electronic Stability Control .....     | 172        |
| <b>Driver assistance systems</b> ..... | <b>174</b> |
| Cruise control .....                   | 174        |
| Speed limiter .....                    | 176        |
| Adaptive cruise control .....          | 177        |
| Forward collision alert .....          | 185        |
| Following distance indication ...      | 187        |
| Active emergency braking .....         | 188        |
| Front pedestrian protection ....       | 191        |
| Parking assist .....                   | 193        |
| Side blind spot alert .....            | 201        |
| Rear view camera .....                 | 202        |
| Traffic sign assistant .....           | 204        |
| Lane keep assist .....                 | 208        |
| <b>Fuel</b> .....                      | <b>210</b> |
| Fuel for petrol engines .....          | 210        |
| Fuel for diesel engines .....          | 212        |
| Refuelling .....                       | 212        |
| <b>Trailer hitch</b> .....             | <b>214</b> |
| General information .....              | 214        |

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| Driving characteristics and<br>towing tips ..... | 215 |
| Trailer towing .....                             | 215 |
| Towing equipment .....                           | 216 |
| Trailer stability assist .....                   | 219 |

## **Driving hints**

### **Control of the vehicle**

#### **Never coast with engine not running**

Many systems will not function in this situation (e.g. brake servo unit, power steering). Driving in this manner is a danger to yourself and others.

All systems function during an Autostop.

Stop-start system ⇨ 155.

#### **Idle boost**

If charging of the vehicle battery is required due to battery condition, the power output of the generator must be increased. This will be achieved by an idle boost which may be audible.

A message appears in the Driver Information Centre.

#### **Pedals**

To ensure the pedal travel is uninhibited, there must be no mats in the area of the pedals.

Use only floor mats, which fit properly and are fixed by the retainers on the driver side.

### **Steering**

If power steering assist is lost because the engine stops or due to a system malfunction, the vehicle can be steered but may require increased effort.

## **Starting and operating**

### **New vehicle running-in**

Do not brake unnecessarily hard for the first few journeys.

During the first drive, smoke may occur because of wax and oil evaporating off the exhaust system. Park the vehicle in the open for a while after the first drive and avoid inhaling the fumes.

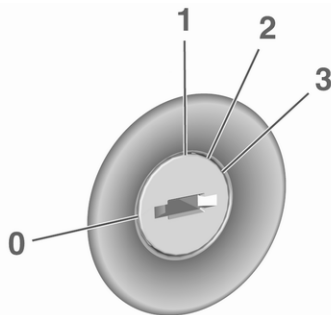
During the running-in period, fuel and engine oil consumption may be higher.

Additionally, the cleaning process of the exhaust filter may take place more often.

Exhaust filter ⇨ 159.

### **Ignition switch positions**

Turn key:



- 0** : ignition off: Some functions remain active until key is removed or driver's door is opened, provided the ignition was on previously
- 1** : accessory power mode: Steering wheel lock released, some electrical functions are operable, ignition is off

- 2** : ignition on power mode: Ignition is on, diesel engine is preheating. Control indicators illuminate and most electrical functions are operable. To turn the key from position **2** to **1** or **0**, first push the key all the way in towards the steering column.
- 3** : engine start: Release key after starting procedure begins

### Steering wheel lock

Remove key from ignition switch and turn steering wheel until it engages.

#### Danger

Never remove the key from ignition switch during driving as this will cause steering wheel lock.

### Power button



Electronic key must be inside the vehicle.

#### Accessory power mode

Press **Engine Start/Stop** once without operating clutch or brake pedal. The yellow LED in the button illuminates. Steering wheel lock is released and some electrical functions are operable, ignition is off.

#### Ignition on power mode

Press and hold **Engine Start/Stop** for 6 seconds without operating clutch or brake pedal. The green LED in the button illuminates, diesel engine is

preheating. Control indicators illuminate and most electrical functions are operable.

### Engine start

Press **Engine Start/Stop** briefly while:

- manual transmission: operating clutch pedal,
- automatic transmission: operating brake pedal with selector lever in **P** or **N**.

Starting the engine ⇨ 153.

### Ignition off

Press **Engine Start/Stop** briefly when Autostop is activated or when engine is running and vehicle is stationary.

Automatic transmission: apply the parking brake and engage **P**.

Press **Engine Start/Stop** briefly without operating clutch or brake pedal when in ignition on power mode.

Some functions remain active until driver's door is opened, provided the ignition was on previously.

### Emergency shut off during driving

Press **Engine Start/Stop** for longer than 2 seconds or press twice briefly within 5 seconds ⇨ 153.

### Steering wheel lock

The steering wheel lock activates automatically when:

- The vehicle is stationary.
- The ignition has been switched off.
- The driver's door is opened.

To release steering wheel lock, open and close driver's door and switch on accessory mode or start the engine directly.

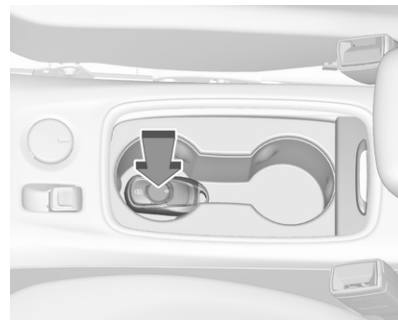
### ⚠ Warning

If the vehicle battery is discharged, the vehicle must not be towed, tow-started or jump-started as the steering wheel lock cannot be disengaged.

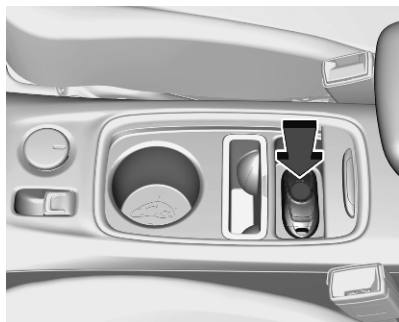
### Operation on vehicles with electronic key system in case of failure

If either the electronic key fails or the battery of the electronic key is weak, the Driver Information Centre may display **No Remote Detected** or **Replace Battery in Remote Key** when you try to start the vehicle.

Place the electronic key solely centred in the transmitter area in longitudinal direction flat with buttons upside as shown in the illustration.



Illustrations show different versions.



Other objects, e.g. other keys, transponder, tags, coins etc. must be removed from the centre console.

Depress the clutch pedal (manual transmission) or the brake pedal (automatic transmission) and press

### **Engine Start/Stop.**

To switch off the engine, press **Engine Start/Stop** again. Remove the electronic key from the centre console.

This option is intended for emergencies only. Replace the electronic key battery as soon as possible ⇨ 23.

For unlocking or locking the doors, see fault in radio remote control unit or electronic key system ⇨ 26.

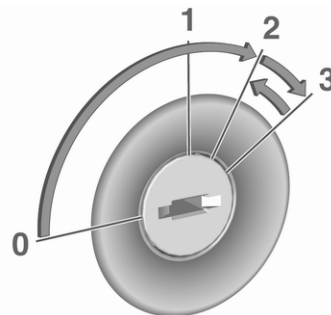
## **Retained power off**

The following electronic systems can work until the driver's door is opened or for ten minutes after the ignition is switched off:

- power windows
- sunroof
- power outlets

## **Starting the engine**

### **Vehicles with ignition switch**




Turn key to position **1** to release the steering wheel lock.

Manual transmission: operate clutch and brake pedal.

Automatic transmission: operate brake pedal and move selector lever to **P** or **N**.

Do not operate accelerator pedal.

Diesel engines: turn the key to position **2** for preheating and wait until control indicator  extinguishes.

Turn key briefly to position **3** and release: an automatic procedure operates the starter with a short delay until the engine is running, see Automatic Starter Control.

Manual transmission: during an Autostop, the engine can be started by depressing the clutch pedal ↗ 155.

Automatic transmission: during an Autostop, the engine can be started by releasing the brake pedal ↗ 155.

### Vehicles with power button



Manual transmission: operate clutch and brake pedal.

Automatic transmission: operate brake pedal and move selector lever to **P** or **N**.

Do not operate accelerator pedal.

Press **Engine Start/Stop** briefly: an automatic procedure operates the starter with a short delay until the engine is running, see automatic starter control.

To switch off the engine when vehicle is stationary, press

**Engine Start/Stop** briefly. Automatic transmission: apply the parking brake and engage **P**.

To start the engine during an Autostop:

- Manual transmission: during an Autostop, the engine can be started by depressing the clutch pedal ↗ 155.
- Automatic transmission: during an Autostop, the engine can be started by releasing the brake pedal ↗ 155.

### Emergency engine shut off during driving

If the engine needs to be switched off during driving in case of emergency, press **Engine Start/Stop** for longer than 2 seconds or press twice briefly within 5 seconds.

#### Danger

Switching off the engine during driving may cause loss of power support for brake and steering systems. Assistance systems and airbag systems are disabled. Lighting and brake lights will extinguish. Therefore power down the engine and ignition while driving only when required in case of emergency.



## Starting the vehicle at low temperatures

Starting the engine without additional heaters is possible down to -25 °C for diesel engines and -30 °C for petrol engines. Required is an engine oil with the correct viscosity, the correct fuel, performed services and a sufficiently charged vehicle battery. With temperatures below -30 °C the automatic transmission requires a warming phase of approx. 5 minutes. The selector lever must be in position **P**.

## Automatic starter control

This function controls the engine starting procedure. The driver does not need to hold the key in position **3** or to hold **Engine Start/Stop** pressed. Once applied, the system will go on starting automatically until the engine is running. Because of the checking procedure, the engine starts running after a short delay.

Possible reasons for a non-starting engine:

- clutch pedal not operated (manual transmission)
- brake pedal not operated or selector lever not in **P** or **N** (automatic transmission)
- timeout occurred

## Turbo engine warm-up

Upon start-up, engine available torque may be limited for a short time, especially when the engine temperature is cold. The limitation is to allow the lubrication system to fully protect the engine.

## Overrun cut-off

The fuel supply is automatically cut off during overrun, i.e. when the vehicle is driven with a gear engaged but accelerator pedal is released.

Depending on driving conditions, the overrun cut-off may be deactivated.

## Stop-start system

The stop-start system helps to save fuel and to reduce the exhaust emissions. When conditions allow, it switches off the engine as soon as the vehicle is at a low speed or at a standstill, e.g. at a traffic light or in a traffic jam. The ignition stays on.


The engine switches on automatically when certain conditions apply or restart is activated by a driver.

## Activation

The stop-start system is available as soon as the engine is started, the vehicle starts-off and the conditions as stated below in this section are fulfilled.

## Deactivation



Deactivate the stop-start system manually by pressing . The deactivation is indicated when the LED in the button illuminates.

## Autostop

### Vehicles with manual transmission

Depending on the engine, two versions of an Autostop are available. See engine data to identify the engine identifier code for your vehicle  
 ⇨ 277.

### Conventional Autostop

An Autostop can be activated at a speed lower than 5 km/h.

Activate a conventional Autostop as follows:

- Depress the clutch pedal.
- Set the lever in neutral.
- Release the clutch pedal.

### Early Autostop

An Autostop can be activated at a speed lower than 14 km/h.

Early Autostop is inhibited if the incline is greater than 5%.

Activate an early Autostop as follows:

- Depress the brake pedal sufficiently.
- Depress the clutch pedal.

The engine will be switched off while the ignition stays on.

Early Autostop is inhibited when the turn lights are on, trailer hitch is connected, the steering wheel is moved beyond a certain point or the incline is greater than 5%.

### Vehicles with automatic transmission

If the vehicle is at a standstill with depressed brake pedal, Autostop is activated automatically.

## Indication



An Autostop is indicated by the needle at the **AUTOSTOP** position in the tachometer.

After restart, the idle speed is indicated.

During an Autostop, the heating and brake performance will be maintained.

### Conditions for an Autostop

The stop-start system checks if each of the following conditions is fulfilled:

- The stop-start system is not manually deactivated.
- The bonnet is fully closed.

- The driver's door is closed or the driver's seat belt is fastened.
- The vehicle battery is sufficiently charged and in good condition.
- The engine is warmed up.
- The engine coolant temperature is not too high.
- The engine exhaust temperature is not too high, e.g. after driving with high engine load.
- The ambient temperature is above -5 °C.
- The brake vacuum is sufficient.
- Between the last restart and a new Autostop must be about 10 seconds.
- The self-cleaning function of the exhaust filter is not active.
- The vehicle was driven at least at walking speed since the last Autostop.

Otherwise an Autostop will be inhibited.

The stop-start system will be deactivated on inclines of 12% or more.

Certain settings of the climate control system may inhibit an Autostop. See Climate control chapter for more details ↗ 139.

Immediately after motorway driving an Autostop may be inhibited.

New vehicle running-in ↗ 150.

### **Vehicle battery discharge protection**

To ensure reliable engine restarts, several vehicle battery discharge protection features are implemented as part of the stop-start system.

### **Power saving measures**

During an Autostop, several electrical features e.g. auxiliary electric heater or heated rear window are disabled or switched to a power saving mode. The fan speed of the climate control system is reduced to save power.

### **Restart of the engine by the driver**

#### **Vehicles with manual transmission**

Depending on the engine, two versions of a restart are available. See engine data to identify the engine identifier code for your vehicle ↗ 277.

### **Conventional restart**

Depress the clutch pedal to restart the engine. For engines with late restart, this is only possible without depressing the brake pedal.

### **Late restart**

- Depress the brake pedal.
- Depress the clutch pedal.
- Select first gear.
- Release the brake pedal to restart the engine.

### **Vehicles with automatic transmission:**

Release the brake pedal or move selector lever out of **D** into **N** or **P** to restart the engine.

### **Restart of the engine by the stop-start system**

On vehicles with manual transmission which are in a conventional Autostop, the selector lever must be in neutral to enable an automatic restart.

On vehicles with manual transmission which are in an early Autostop, an automatic restart is possible, when not in neutral if the brake pedal and the clutch pedal are depressed.

On vehicles with automatic transmission, the selector lever must be in **D** to enable an automatic restart.

The engine will be restarted automatically by the stop-start system, if one of the following conditions occurs during an Autostop:

- The stop-start system is manually deactivated.
- The bonnet is opened.
- The driver's seat belt is unfastened and / or the driver's door is opened.
- The engine temperature is too low.
- The charging level of the vehicle battery is below a defined level.
- The brake vacuum is not sufficient.
- The vehicle is driven at least at walking speed.
- The climate control system requests an engine start.

- The desired compartment temperature does not match the actual temperature.
- The air conditioning is manually switched on.

If the bonnet is not fully closed, a warning message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

If an electrical accessory, e.g. a portable CD player, is connected to the power outlet, a brief power drop during the restart might be noticeable.

#### **Note**

If a trailer or a bike carrier is attached, early Autostop and late restart is deactivated.

## **Parking**

### **⚠ Warning**

- Do not park the vehicle on an easily ignitable surface. The high temperature of the exhaust system could ignite the surface.
- Always apply the parking brake. Activate the manual

parking brake without pressing the release button. Apply as firmly as possible on a downhill slope or uphill slope. Depress brake pedal at the same time to reduce operating force.

For vehicles with electric parking brake, pull switch (Ⓢ) for a minimum of 1 second until control indicator (Ⓢ) illuminates constantly and electric parking brake is applied ➔ 108.


- Switch off the engine.
- If the vehicle is on a level surface or uphill slope, engage first gear or set the selector lever to position **P** before removing the ignition key or switching off ignition on vehicles with power button. On an uphill slope, turn the front wheels away from the kerb.

If the vehicle is on a downhill slope, engage reverse gear or set the selector lever to position **P** before removing the ignition key or switching off ignition on

vehicles with power button. Turn the front wheels towards the kerb.

- Close the windows and the sunroof.
- Remove the ignition key from the ignition switch or switch off ignition on vehicles with power button. Turn the steering wheel until the steering wheel lock is felt to engage.

For vehicles with automatic transmission, the key can only be removed when the selector lever is in position **P**.

- Lock the vehicle by pressing the button on the door handle or the button  on the remote control.
- Activate the anti-theft alarm system.
- The engine cooling fans may run after the engine has been switched off ⇨ 222.

### Caution

After running at high engine speeds or with high engine loads, operate the engine briefly at a low load or run in neutral for approx. 30 seconds before switching off, in order to protect the turbocharger.

### Note

In the event of an accident with airbag deployment, the engine is switched off automatically if the vehicle comes to a standstill within a certain time.

In countries with extremely low temperatures it may be necessary to park the vehicle without applied parking brake. Make sure to park the vehicle on a level surface.

## Engine exhaust

### Danger

Engine exhaust gases contain poisonous carbon monoxide, which is colourless and odourless and could be fatal if inhaled.

If exhaust gases enter the interior of the vehicle, open the windows. Have the cause of the fault rectified by a workshop.

Avoid driving with an open load compartment, otherwise exhaust gases could enter the vehicle.

## Exhaust filter

The exhaust filter is a particle filter for diesel and petrol engines.

## Automatic cleaning process

The exhaust filter system filters soot particles out of the exhaust gases. The system includes a self-cleaning function that runs automatically during driving without any notification. The filter is cleaned by periodically burning off the soot particles at high temperature. This process takes place automatically under set driving conditions and may take up to 25 minutes. Typically it needs between 7 and 12 minutes. Autostop is not available and fuel consumption may be higher during this period. The emission of smells and smoke during this process is normal.

## System requires cleaning

Under certain conditions, e.g. driving short distances, the system cannot clean itself automatically.

If cleaning of the filter is required and if previous driving conditions did not enable automatic cleaning, it will be indicated by a warning message in the Driver Information Centre.

A warning message appears when exhaust filter is full. Start cleaning process as soon as possible.

A warning message also appears when exhaust filter has reached the maximum filling level. Start cleaning process immediately to avoid damage to the engine.

## Activate self-cleaning process

Cleaning process is completed more quickly at high engine speeds and loads. Therefore, drive in lower gears than normal, and use manual gear selection on vehicles with automatic transmission. Usage of electrical consumers like air conditioning and heated windows to increase engine load supports cleaning process.

|  |
|--|
| <b>Caution</b>   |
| If possible, do not interrupt cleaning process. Drive until cleaning is completed to avoid the need for service or repair by a workshop. |

## Vehicles with petrol engine

To activate cleaning process, continue driving, keep engine speed above 2500 rpm. Shift down if necessary.

Drive dynamically at different engine speeds. Use engine brake for deceleration, if possible.


Keep on driving until self-cleaning operation is complete and the display message disappears.

## Vehicles with diesel engine

To activate cleaning process, continue driving, keep engine speed above 2000 rpm, ideally and continuously around 2500 rpm. Shift down if necessary.

Keep on driving until self-cleaning operation is complete and the display message disappears.

## Cleaning process not possible

If cleaning is not possible for any reason, control indicator  illuminates and a warning message appears in the Driver Information Centre. Engine power may be reduced. Seek the assistance of a workshop immediately.

## Catalytic converter

The catalytic converter reduces the amount of harmful substances in the exhaust gases.

### Caution

Fuel grades other than those listed on pages ⇨ 210, ⇨ 277 could damage the catalytic converter or electronic components.

Unburnt petrol will overheat and damage the catalytic converter. Therefore avoid excessive use of the starter, running the fuel tank dry and starting the engine by pushing or towing.

In the event of misfiring, uneven engine running, a reduction in engine performance or other unusual problems, have the cause of the fault rectified by a workshop as soon as possible. In an emergency, driving can be continued for a short period, keeping vehicle speed and engine speed low.

## AdBlue

### General information

The selective catalytic reduction (BlueInjection) is a method to substantially reduce the nitrogen oxides in the exhaust emission. This is achieved by injecting a Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) into the exhaust system. The ammonia released by the fluid reacts with nitrous gases ( $\text{NO}_x$ ) from the exhaust and turns it into nitrogen and water.

The designation of this fluid is AdBlue®. It is a non-toxic, non-flammable, colourless and odourless fluid which consists of 32% urea and 68% water.

### ⚠ Warning

Avoid contact of your eyes or skin with AdBlue.

In case of eye or skin contact, rinse off with water.

### Caution

Avoid contact of the paintwork with AdBlue.

In case of contact, rinse off with water.

AdBlue freezes at a temperature of approx.  $-11\text{ }^{\circ}\text{C}$ . As the vehicle is equipped with an AdBlue pre-heater, the emissions reduction at low temperatures is ensured. The AdBlue pre-heater works automatically.

### Note

Frozen and again liquefied AdBlue is usable without quality loss.

The typical AdBlue consumption is approx. two litres per 1000 km, but can also be higher depending on driving behaviour (e.g. high load or towing).

### AdBlue tank

The AdBlue tank level can be found in the display menu.

### Level warnings

Depending on the calculated range of AdBlue, different messages are displayed in the Driver Information Centre. The messages and the restrictions are a legal requirement.

The first possible warning is **AdBlue Range: 2400 km**.


This warning will show up once briefly with the calculated range. Driving is possible without any restrictions.

The next warning level is entered with a range below 1750 km. The message with the current range will always be displayed when ignition is

switched on and needs to be confirmed ⇨ 113. Refill AdBlue before entering the next warning level.

At an AdBlue range below 900 km, the following warning messages are alternately displayed and cannot be dismissed:

- **AdBlue Low Refill Now**
- **Engine Restart Prevented in 900 km**


Additionally, control indicator  flashes continuously.

### Note

In case of high AdBlue consumption, the Driver Information Centre may display this warning without the previous warning stages.

The last warning level is entered when the AdBlue tank is empty. Restart of the engine is not possible. The following warning messages are alternately displayed and cannot be dismissed:

- **AdBlue Empty Refill Now**
- **Engine Will Not Restart**

Additionally, control indicator  flashes continuously.

With active prevention of an engine start, the following message will be displayed:

### Refill AdBlue To Start Vehicle.

The tank must be refilled completely with AdBlue, otherwise restarting of the engine is not possible ⇨ 280.

### High emission warnings

If the exhaust emission rises above a certain value, warnings similar to the range warnings will be displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

Requests to have the exhaust system checked and finally the announcement of the prevention of an engine restart are displayed. These restrictions are a legal requirement.

Consult a workshop for assistance.



## Refilling AdBlue

### Caution

Only use AdBlue that complies with European standards DIN 70 070 and ISO 22241-1.

Do not use additives.

Do not dilute AdBlue.

Otherwise the selective catalytic reduction system could be damaged.

### Note

Whenever a filling pump with a nozzle for passenger cars is not available at a filling station, use only AdBlue bottles or canisters with a sealed refill adapter for refilling, to prevent splashback and overspill, and in order to ensure that the fumes from the tank are captured and do not emerge. AdBlue in bottles or canisters is available in many filling stations and can be purchased e.g. at Opel dealers and other retail outlets.

Since AdBlue has a limited durability, check the date of expiry before refilling.

### Note

When unscrewing the protective cap from the filler neck, ammonia fumes may emerge. Do not inhale as the fumes have a pungent smell. The fumes are not harmful by inhalation.

The AdBlue tank should be filled completely. This must be done if the warning message regarding prevention of an engine restart is already displayed.

The vehicle must be parked on a level surface.

The filler neck for AdBlue is located behind the fuel filler flap, which is located at right rear side of the vehicle.

The fuel filler flap can only be opened if the vehicle is unlocked.

1. Remove key from ignition switch.
2. Close all doors to avoid ammonia fumes entering the interior of the vehicle.

3. Release the fuel filler flap by pushing the flap ⇨ 212.



4. Unscrew protective cap from the filler neck.
5. Open AdBlue canister.
6. Mount one end of the hose on the canister and screw the other end on the filler neck.
7. Lift the canister until it is empty, or until the flow from the canister has stopped. This can take up to 5 minutes.
8. Place the canister on the ground to empty the hose, wait 15 seconds.

9. Unscrew the hose from the filler neck.
10. Mount the protective cap and turn clockwise until it engages.

### Note

Dispose of AdBlue canister according to environmental requirements. To reuse the hose flush it with clear water after usage.

## Automatic transmission

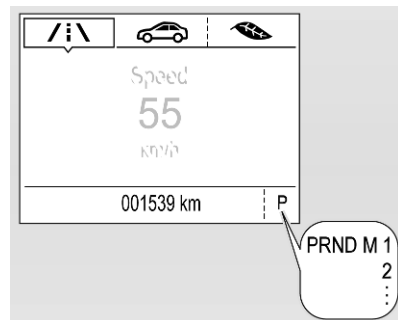
The automatic transmission permits automatic gearshifting (automatic mode) or manual gearshifting (manual mode).

Manual shifting is possible in manual mode by tapping the selector lever to **+** or **-** 166.

## Continuous variable transmission

The engine speed is always within the ideal fuel consumption range. When selector level is in **D** and high power is required, the electronic transmission control changes from stepless operation to a seven step automatic shifting.

## Transmission display



The mode or selected gear is shown in the Driver Information Centre.

In automatic mode, the driving programme is indicated by **D**.

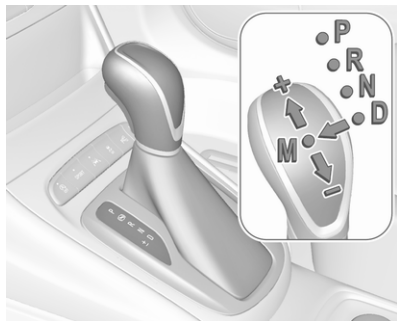
In manual mode, **M** and the number of the selected gear is indicated.

**R** indicates reverse gear.

**N** indicates neutral position.

**P** indicates park position.

## Gear selection



- P** : park position, wheels are locked, engage only when the vehicle is stationary
- R** : reverse gear, engage only when the vehicle is stationary
- N** : neutral
- D** : automatic mode
- M** : manual mode
- +** : upshift in manual mode
- : downshift in manual mode



The selector lever is locked in **P** and can only be moved when the ignition is on, the release button on the selector lever is pushed and the brake pedal is applied.

Without brake pedal applied, control indicator (ⓘ) illuminates.

If the selector lever is not in **P** when the ignition is switched off, control indicator (ⓘ) flashes.

To engage **P** or **R**, press the release button.

The engine can only be started with the lever in position **P** or **N**. When position **N** is selected, press the brake pedal or apply the parking brake before starting.

Do not accelerate while engaging a gear. Never depress the accelerator pedal and brake pedal at the same time.

When a gear is engaged, the vehicle slowly begins to creep when the brake is released.

## Engine braking

To utilise the engine braking effect, select a lower gear in good time when driving downhill, see manual mode.

## Rocking the vehicle

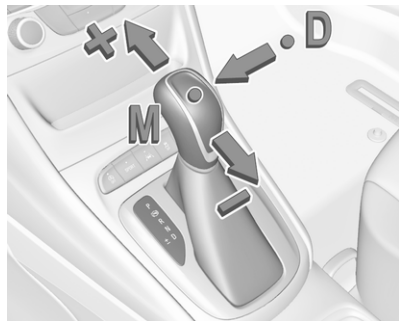
Rocking the vehicle is only permissible if the vehicle is stuck in sand, mud or snow. Move the selector lever between **D** and **R** in a repeat pattern. Do not race the engine and avoid sudden acceleration.

## Parking

Apply the parking brake and engage **P**.

The ignition key can only be removed when the selector lever is in position **P**.

## Manual mode



Move selector lever out of position **D** towards the left in position **M**.

Tap selector lever upwards **+** to shift to a higher gear.

Tap the selector lever downwards **-** to shift to a lower gear.

If a higher gear is selected when vehicle speed is too low, or a lower gear when vehicle speed is too high, the shift is not executed. This can cause a message in the Driver Information Centre.

In manual mode, no automatic shifting to a higher gear takes place at high engine revolutions.

## Gear shift indication

The symbol **▲** or **▼** with a number beside it is indicated when gearshifting is recommended for fuel saving reasons.

Shift indication appears only in manual mode.

## Electronic driving programmes

- Special programmes automatically adapt the shifting points when driving up inclines or down hills.
- Shifting is disabled during a certain lateral acceleration, indicated by **⚙** in the transmission display.
- In snowy or icy conditions or on other slippery surfaces, the electronic transmission control enables the driver to select manually first, second or third gear for starting off. Except vehicles with continuously variable transmission.

## Kickdown

Pressing down the accelerator pedal beyond the kickdown detent will lead to maximum acceleration independent of the selected driving mode. The transmission shifts to a lower gear depending on engine speed and shifts to a higher gear at high engine revolutions.

## Fault

In the event of a fault a message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

Vehicle messages ⇨ 120.

Electronic transmission control enables only fourth gear. The transmission no longer shifts automatically.

Have the cause of the fault remedied by a workshop.

## Interruption of power supply

In the event of an interruption of power supply, the selector lever cannot be moved out of the **P** position. The ignition key cannot be removed from the ignition switch.

If the vehicle battery is discharged, start the vehicle using jump leads ⇨ 261.

If the vehicle battery is not the cause of the fault, release the selector lever.

1. Apply the parking brake.



2. Release the selector lever trim from the centre console. Poke with a finger into the leather socket below the selector lever and push the trim upwards. Rotate trim to the left.



3. Insert a small stick (e.g. a pen or screwdriver) into the opening near the selector lever. Push down the stick vertically and move the selector lever out of **P**. If this position is engaged again, the selector lever will be locked again. Have the cause of the power supply interruption remedied by a workshop.

4. Mount the selector lever trim onto the centre console and refit.

## Manual transmission



To engage reverse, depress the clutch pedal and then press the release button on the selector lever and engage the gear.

If the gear does not engage, set the lever to neutral, release the clutch pedal and depress again; then repeat gear selection.

Do not slip the clutch unnecessarily.

When operating, depress the clutch pedal completely. Do not use the pedal as a foot rest.

When clutch slip is detected for a specific time, the engine power will be reduced. A warning is displayed in the Driver Information Centre. Release the clutch.

### Caution

It is not advisable to drive with the hand resting on the selector lever.

Gear shift indication ⇨ 109.

Stop-start system ⇨ 155.

## Brakes

The brake system comprises two independent brake circuits.

If a brake circuit fails, the vehicle can still be braked using the other brake circuit. However, braking effect is achieved only when the brake pedal is depressed firmly. Considerably more force is needed for this. The braking distance is extended. Seek the assistance of a workshop before continuing the journey.

When the engine is not running, the support of the brake servo unit disappears once the brake pedal has been depressed once or twice. Braking effect is not reduced, but braking requires significantly greater force. It is especially important to bear this in mind when being towed.

Control indicator (D) ⇨ 108.

## Antilock brake system

Antilock brake system (ABS) prevents the wheels from locking.

ABS starts to regulate brake pressure as soon as a wheel shows a tendency to lock. The vehicle remains steerable, even during hard braking.

ABS control is made apparent through a pulse in the brake pedal and the noise of the regulation process.

For optimum braking, keep the brake pedal fully depressed throughout the braking process, despite the fact that the pedal is pulsating. Do not reduce the pressure on the pedal.

After starting off, the system performs a self-test which may be audible.



Control indicator (ABS) ⇨ 109.

### Adaptive brake light

During full braking, all three brake lights flash for the duration of ABS control.

### Fault

#### ⚠ Warning

If there is a fault in the ABS, the wheels may be liable to lock due to braking that is heavier than normal. The advantages of ABS are no longer available. During hard braking, the vehicle can no longer be steered and may swerve.

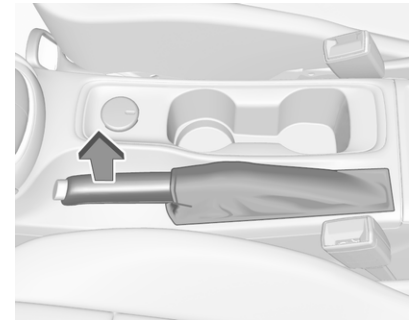
Have the cause of the fault remedied by a workshop.

### Parking brake

#### ⚠ Warning

Before leaving the vehicle, check parking brake status. Control indicator (P) (manual parking brake) or (E) (electrical parking brake) illuminate constantly when parking brake is applied.

### Manual parking brake



#### ⚠ Warning

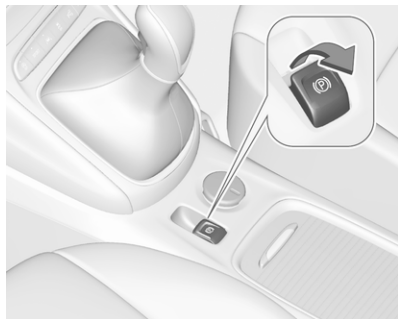
Always apply parking brake firmly without operating the release button, and apply as firmly as possible on a downhill or uphill slope.

To release the parking brake, pull the lever up slightly, press the release button and fully lower the lever.

To reduce the operating forces of the parking brake, depress the foot brake at the same time.

Control indicator (1) ⇨ 108.

## Electric parking brake



### Applying when vehicle is stationary

Pull the switch (P). If control indicator (P) illuminates, electric parking brake is applied.

The electric parking brake can always be activated, even if the ignition is off.

Do not operate electric parking brake system too often without engine running as this will discharge the vehicle battery.

### Releasing

Switch on ignition. Keep foot brake pedal depressed and then push switch (P). If control indicator (P) extinguishes, electric parking brake is released.

### Drive away function

Vehicles with manual transmission: Depressing the clutch pedal and then slightly releasing the clutch pedal and slightly depressing the accelerator pedal releases the electric parking brake automatically. This is not possible when switch (P) is pulled at the same time.

Vehicles with automatic transmission: Engaging D and then depressing the accelerator pedal releases the electric parking brake automatically. This is not possible when switch (P) is pulled at the same time.

### Dynamic braking when vehicle is moving

When the vehicle is moving and the switch (P) is kept pulled, the electric parking brake system will decelerate the vehicle, but will not apply statically.

As soon as the switch (P) is released, dynamic braking will be stopped.

### Automatic applying

If the vehicle is equipped with automatic transmission and adaptive cruise control is active, electric parking brake is applied automatically when vehicle is stopped by the system for more than 2 minutes.


Parking brake releases automatically after moving off.

### Functionality check


When the vehicle is not moving, the electric parking brake might be applied automatically. This is done to check the system.



### Fault

Failure mode of electric parking brake is indicated by a control indicator  and by a vehicle message which is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

Vehicle messages ⇨ 120.

Control indicator  flashes: electric parking brake is not fully applied or released. When continuously flashing, release electric parking brake and retry applying.

### Brake assist

If brake pedal is depressed quickly and forcefully, maximum brake force is automatically applied.

Operation of brake assist might become apparent by a pulse in the brake pedal and a greater resistance when depressing the brake pedal.

Maintain steady pressure on the brake pedal as long as full braking is required. Maximum brake force is automatically reduced when brake pedal is released.

### Hill start assist

The system helps prevent unintended movement when driving away on inclines.

When releasing the brake pedal after stopping on an incline, brakes remain on for further two seconds. The brakes release automatically as soon as the vehicle begins to accelerate.

## Ride control systems


### Traction Control system

The Traction Control system (TC) is a component of the Electronic Stability Control (ESC).

TC improves driving stability when necessary, regardless of the type of road surface or tyre grip, by preventing the drive wheels from spinning.

As soon as the drive wheels starts to spin, engine output is reduced and the wheel spinning the most is braked individually. This considerably improves the driving stability of the vehicle on slippery road surfaces.



TC is operational after each engine start as soon as the control indicator  extinguishes.

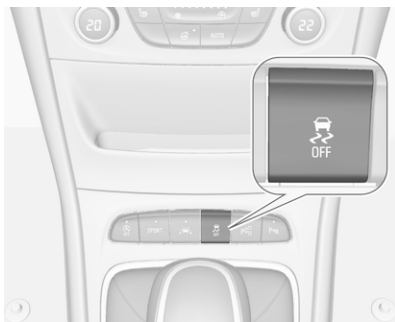
When TC operates  flashes.


**Warning**

Do not let this special safety feature tempt you into taking risks when driving.

Adapt speed to the road conditions.

Control indicator  109.

**Deactivation**


TC can be switched off when spinning of drive wheels is required: press  briefly.



Control indicator  illuminates.


A status message appears in the Driver Information Centre when TC is deactivated.

When TC is deactivated, ESC remains active but with higher control threshold.

TC is reactivated by pressing  again. A status message pops up in the Driver Information Centre when TC is reactivated.

TC is also reactivated the next time the ignition is switched on.

**Fault**

If there is a fault in the system the control indicator  illuminates continuously and a message appears in the Driver Information Centre. The system is not operational.

Have the cause of the fault remedied by a workshop.

**Electronic Stability Control**


Electronic Stability Control (ESC) improves driving stability when necessary, regardless of the type of road surface or tyre grip.

As soon as the vehicle starts to swerve (understeer / oversteer), engine output is reduced and the wheels are braked individually.

ESC operates in combination with the Traction Control system (TC). It prevents the drive wheels from spinning.

Torque distribution is a special feature that allocates the torque to the drive wheels before the ESC intervenes. When cornering, the wheels on the inner curve are braked individually. Additionally, engine torque will be delivered to the drive wheel on the outer curve. This reduces the tendency of understeering and improves traction when cornering fast.



ESC is operational after each engine start as soon as the control indicator  extinguishes.

When ESC operates  flashes.

### Warning

Do not let this special safety feature tempt you into taking risks when driving.




Adapt speed to the road conditions.

Control indicator  ⇨ 109.



## Deactivation






ESC and TC can be deactivated:

- hold  pressed for a minimum of five seconds: ESC and TC are both deactivated.  and  illuminate and status messages appear in the Driver Information Centre.




- To deactivate only Traction control system press button  briefly: TC is inactive but ESC remains active,  illuminates. A status message appears in the Driver Information Centre when TC is deactivated.

ESC is reactivated by pressing the  button again. If the TC system was previously disabled, both TC and ESC are reactivated.  and  extinguishes when TC and ESC are reactivated.

ESC is also reactivated the next time the ignition is switched on.

## Fault

If there is a fault in the system the control indicator  illuminates continuously and a message appears in the Driver Information Centre. The system is not operational.

Have the cause of the fault remedied by a workshop.

## Driver assistance systems

### ⚠ Warning

Driver assistance systems are developed to support the driver and not to replace the driver's attention.

The driver accepts full responsibility when driving the vehicle.

When using driver assistance systems, always take care regarding the current traffic situation.

### Cruise control

The cruise control can store and maintain speeds of approx. 30 km/h to maximum vehicle speed. Deviations from the stored speeds may occur when driving uphill or downhill.

Activating in first gear is not possible.



Do not use the cruise control if it is not advisable to maintain a constant speed.





Illustrations show different versions.

Control indicator  112.



## Switching on the system



Press ; control indicator  in instrument cluster illuminates white.

## Activation of the functionality



Accelerate to the desired speed and turn thumb wheel to **SET/-**, the current speed is stored and maintained. Control indicator  in instrument cluster illuminates green. On Uplevel display  illuminates green and set speed is indicated. Accelerator pedal can be released.

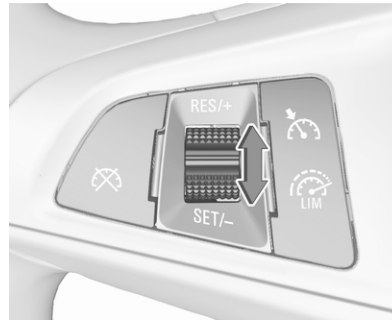
Vehicle speed can be increased by depressing the accelerator pedal. When the accelerator pedal is released, the previously stored speed is resumed.

Cruise control remains activated while gearshifting.

## Increase speed

With cruise control active, hold thumb wheel turned to **RES/+** or briefly turn to **RES/+** repeatedly: speed increases continuously or in small increments.




Alternatively accelerate to the desired speed and store by turning to **SET/-**.



## Reduce speed

With cruise control active, hold thumb wheel turned to **SET/-** or briefly turn to **SET/-** repeatedly: speed decreases continuously or in small increments.

## Deactivation of the functionality

Press ; control indicator  in instrument cluster illuminates white. On Uplevel display  changes to white.

Cruise control is deactivated, but not switched off. Last stored speed remains in memory for later speed resume.

Automatic deactivation:



- Vehicle speed is below approx. 30 km/h.
- Vehicle speed drops more than 25 km/h below the set speed.
- The brake pedal is depressed.
- The clutch pedal is depressed for a few seconds.
- The selector lever is in **N**.
- Engine speed is in a very low range.


- The Traction Control system or Electronic Stability Control is operating.
- Parking brake is applied.
- Simultaneous pressing **RES/+** and brake pedal deactivates cruise control and will delete stored speed.

## Resume stored speed

Turn thumb wheel to **RES/+** at a speed above 30 km/h. The stored speed will be obtained.

## Switching off the system

Press , control indicator  in instrument cluster extinguishes. The stored speed is deleted.

Pressing  to activate the speed limiter or switching off the ignition also switches off cruise control and deletes the stored speed.

## Speed limiter

The speed limiter prevents the vehicle exceeding a preset maximum speed.

The maximum speed can be set at speeds above 25 km/h up to 200 km/h.

The driver can only accelerate up to the preset speed. Deviations from the limited speed may occur when driving downhill.

The preset speed limit is displayed in the Driver Information Centre when the system is active.


## Activation of the functionality



Illustrations show different versions.



Press , symbol  illuminates in the Driver Information Centre.


If cruise control has been activated before, it is switched off when speed limiter is activated and the control indicator  extinguishes.

## Set speed limit

Accelerate to the desired speed and briefly turn thumb wheel to **SET/-**: the current speed is stored as maximum speed.

On Midlevel display  and the speed limit is displayed.



On Uplevel display  changes to green.

### Change speed limit

With speed limiter active, hold or briefly turn thumb wheel to **RES/+** to increase or **SET/-** to decrease the desired maximum speed.


### Exceeding the speed limit

When exceeding the limited speed without driver input, the speed will flash in the Driver Information Centre and a chime sounds during this period.

In the event of an emergency, it is possible to exceed the speed limit by depressing the accelerator pedal firmly nearly to the final point. In this case no chime appears.


Release the accelerator pedal and the speed limiter function is reactivated once a speed lower than the limit speed is obtained.

### Deactivation of the functionality

Press : speed limiter is deactivated and the vehicle can be driven without speed limit.



On Midlevel display the stored limited speed is indicated in brackets.

On Uplevel display  changes to white.


Additionally, a corresponding message appears.


Speed limiter is deactivated, but not switched off. Last stored speed remains in memory for later speed resume.

### Resume limit speed

Turn thumb wheel to **RES/+**. The stored speed limit will be obtained and is indicated without brackets in the Driver Information Centre.

### Switching off the system

Press , the speed limit indication extinguishes in the Driver Information Centre. The stored speed is deleted.

By pressing  to activate cruise control or adaptive cruise control, speed limiter is also deactivated and the stored speed is deleted.

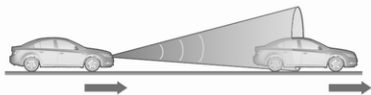
By switching off the ignition, speed limiter is also deactivated, but the speed limit will be stored for next speed limiter activation.

### Adaptive cruise control

Adaptive cruise control is an enhancement to conventional cruise control with the additional feature of maintaining a certain distance behind the vehicle ahead.

Adaptive cruise control automatically decelerates the vehicle when approaching a slower moving vehicle. It then adjusts the vehicle speed to follow the vehicle ahead at the selected following distance. The vehicle speed increases or decreases to follow the vehicle in front, but will not exceed the set speed. It may apply limited braking with activated brake lights.

The adaptive cruise control can store set speed over 30 km/h for manual transmission. On vehicles with automatic transmissions the system can brake until a full stop and drive off from a stop.



Adaptive cruise control uses radar and camera sensors to detect the vehicles ahead. If no vehicle is detected in the driving path, the adaptive cruise control will behave like a conventional cruise control.

For additional information including a video, visit us online.

Adaptive cruise control is mainly advised to be used on long straight roads like motorways or country roads with steady traffic. Do not use the system if it is not advisable to maintain a constant speed.

Control indicator 112, 112, 112.

### Warning

The complete driver attention is always required while driving with adaptive cruise control. The driver stays fully in control of the vehicle because the brake pedal, the accelerator pedal and the cancel switch have priority over any adaptive cruise control operation.

### Switching on the system



Press to switch on adaptive cruise control. appears in the Driver Information Centre.


### Activation of the functionality by setting the speed

Adaptive cruise control can be activated at speeds above 25 km/h on vehicles with automatic transmission or 30 km/h on vehicles with manual transmission. The upper speed limit is 180 km/h.



Accelerate to the desired speed and turn thumb wheel to **SET/-**, the current speed is stored and maintained.



The adaptive cruise control symbol , the following distance setting and set speed are indicated in the Driver Information Centre.

The accelerator pedal can be released. Adaptive cruise control remains activated during gear shifting.

### Overriding set speed

It is always possible to drive faster than the selected set speed by depressing the accelerator pedal. When the accelerator pedal is released, the vehicle returns to the desired distance if a slower vehicle is ahead. Otherwise it returns to the stored speed.

Once the system is activated, adaptive cruise control decelerates or brakes if it detects a vehicle ahead, which is slower or closer than the desired following distance.

#### Warning

Accelerating by the driver deactivates automatic braking by the system. This is indicated as a pop-up warning in the Driver Information Centre or by the adaptive cruise control symbol turning blue.

### Take over current speed

If the accelerator pedal is pressed, the current vehicle speed is taken over as stored speed. This is also valid, if the current vehicle speed is lower than the Set Speed.

### Increase or reduce speed

The preset speed can be changed by moving thumb wheel to **RES/+** to increase or **SET/-** to decrease the speed. Move thumb wheel repeatedly to change speed in small steps, move and hold to change speed in large steps.


### Resume stored speed

If the system is switched on but inactive and a speed was stored before, turn thumb wheel to **RES/+** at a speed above 5 km/h (with automatic transmission) or above 30 km/h (with manual transmission) to resume the stored speed.

### Full speed range adaptive cruise control on vehicles with automatic transmission

Full speed range adaptive cruise control will maintain a following distance behind a detected vehicle and slow your vehicle to a stop behind that vehicle.

When the vehicle ahead accelerates after a brief stop, the adaptive cruise control will drive off automatically without driver action. If necessary, press **RES/+** or the accelerator pedal to resume adaptive cruise control. Pressing the accelerator pedal allows more control over the acceleration after driving off. Note that automatic braking is disabled during usage of the accelerator pedal.

If the stopped vehicle ahead was stopped for a longer time and then begins to move forward, the green illuminated vehicle ahead control indicator  will flash and a warning chime will sound as a reminder to check traffic before proceeding.

### Warning

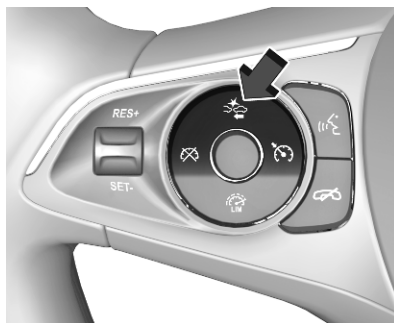
When full speed range adaptive cruise control is deactivated or cancelled, the vehicle will no longer be held at a stop and can start moving. Always be prepared to manually apply the brake pedal to hold the vehicle stationary.



Do not leave the vehicle while it is being held at a stop by the full speed range adaptive cruise control. Always move selector lever to park position **P** and switch off the ignition before leaving the vehicle.

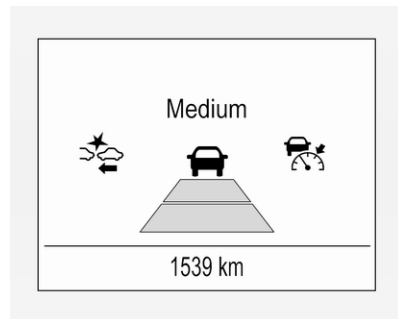
### Setting the following distance

When adaptive cruise control detects a slower moving vehicle in the driving path, it will adjust the vehicle speed to maintain the following distance selected by the driver.


The following distance can be set to near, medium or far.



Press , the current setting is shown in the Driver Information Centre. Press  again to change the following distance. The setting is also displayed in the Driver Information Centre.



The selected following distance is indicated by filled distance bars in the adaptive cruise control page.

Note that the following distance setting is shared with the sensitivity setting of forward collision alert  185.


Example: If setting 3 (far) is selected, then the driver is warned sooner before a possible collision, also if adaptive cruise control is inactive or switched off.

### **⚠ Warning**

The Driver accepts full responsibility to drive with the appropriate following distance based on traffic, weather, visibility and regional regulation. Following distance must be adjusted or the system switched off when required by the prevailing conditions.

### **Detecting the vehicle ahead**



The green illuminated vehicle ahead control indicator  is displayed when the system detects a vehicle in the


driving path. The range of the sensors is between 25 and 150 m depending on vehicle speed.

Forward collision alert  185.

If this symbol does not display, or displays briefly, adaptive cruise control will not respond to vehicles ahead.

### **Deactivation of the functionality**

Adaptive cruise control is deactivated by the driver when:

-  is pressed.
- Brake pedal is applied.
- Clutch pedal is depressed for more than four seconds.
- Selector lever of automatic transmission is moved to **N**.

The system is also automatically deactivated when:


- Vehicle speed accelerates above 190 km/h or slows down below 55 km/h. Vehicles with automatic transmission slows down to a stop without deactivating within 5 minutes.

- The Traction Control system is deactivated or operating.
- The Electronic Stability Control is deactivated or operating.
- There is no traffic and nothing detected on the road sides for approx. 1 minute. In this case there are no radar echoes and the sensor may report that it is blocked.
- The active emergency braking system is applying the brakes.
- Driving on steep inclines.
- The radar sensor is blocked by an ice or water film.
- A fault is detected in the radar, camera, engine or brake system.
- The brakes need to cool down.

Additionally, the system is automatically deactivated on vehicles with automatic transmission (full speed range adaptive cruise control) when:

- The incline uphill or downhill is greater than 20%.
- The electric parking brake is applied.


- The vehicle is being held to a stop by the system for more than 5 minutes.
- The vehicle stops, the driver's seat belt is unbuckled and the driver's door is opened.

When adaptive cruise control is deactivated, the control indicator  changes from green to white and a pop-up message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

The stored speed is maintained.





On Midlevel display, the stored speed is indicated in brackets in the Driver Information Centre when the system is deactivated but not switched off.

On Uplevel display, the adaptive cruise control symbol  changes from green to white when the system is deactivated but not switched off.

### **Warning**

When adaptive cruise control is deactivated, the driver must take over full brake and engine control immediately.

### **Switching off the system**

Press  to switch off adaptive cruise control. The control indicator  extinguishes in the Driver Information Centre. The stored speed is deleted.

Switching off the ignition also switches off adaptive cruise control and deletes the stored speed.

### **Driver's attention**

- Use adaptive cruise control carefully on bends or mountain roads, as it can lose the vehicle ahead and needs time to detect it again.

- Do not use the system on slippery roads as it can create rapid changes in tyre traction (wheel spinning), so that you could lose control of the vehicle.
- Do not use adaptive cruise control during rain, snow or heavy dirt, as the radar sensor can be covered by a water film, dust, ice or snow. This reduces or suppresses completely the visibility. In case of sensor blockage, clean the sensor cover.

### **System limits**

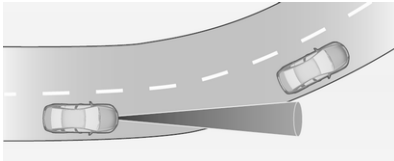
#### **Warning**

The system's automatic brake force does not permit hard braking and the braking level may not be sufficient to avoid a collision.


- After a sudden lane change, the system needs a certain time to detect the next preceding vehicle. So if a new vehicle is detected, the system may accelerate instead of braking.

- Adaptive cruise control does ignore the oncoming traffic.
- Adaptive cruise control does not consider pedestrians and animals for braking and driving off.
- Adaptive cruise control considers stopped vehicles only at low speed.
- Do not use adaptive cruise control when towing a trailer.
- Do not use adaptive cruise control on roads with an incline of more than 10%.

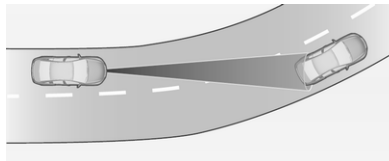
### Bends



The adaptive cruise control calculates a predicted path based on the centrifugal force. This predicted path considers the current bend characteristic, but cannot consider a future bend change. The system may

lose the current vehicle ahead or consider a vehicle which is not in the actual lane. This can happen when entering or exiting a bend or if the bend gets stronger or weaker. The camera applies a certain correction based on the detectable lane markings. The control indicator  will extinguish, if a vehicle ahead is no longer detected.

If the centrifugal force is too high in a bend, the system slows down the vehicle slightly. This braking level is not designed to avoid spinning-off the bend. The driver is responsible for reducing the selected speed before entering a bend and in general to adapt the speed to the road type and to existing speed limits.

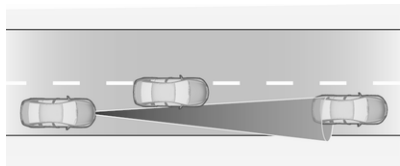


### Motorways

On motorways, adapt the set speed to the situation and the weather. Always consider that adaptive cruise control has a limited visibility range, a limited braking level and a certain reaction time to verify if a vehicle is on the driving path or not. Furthermore, adaptive cruise control was designed to brake as late as possible to allow changing the lane before the automatic braking. Adaptive cruise control may not be able to brake the vehicle in time to avoid a collision with a much slower vehicle or after a lane change. This is particularly true while driving fast or if the visibility is reduced due to weather conditions.

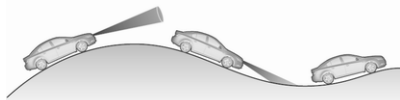
While entering or exiting a motorway, adaptive cruise control may lose the vehicle ahead and accelerate up to the set speed. For this reason, decrease the set speed before the exit or before the entry.

## Vehicle path changes



If another vehicle enters your driving path, adaptive cruise control will first consider the vehicle when it is completely in your path. Be ready to take action and depress the brake pedal, if you need to brake more quickly.

## Hill and trailer considerations



### ⚠ Warning

Do not use adaptive cruise control on steep hill roads.

System performance on hills depends on vehicle speed, vehicle load, traffic conditions and the road gradient. It may not detect a vehicle in your path while driving on hills. Full speed range adaptive control is deactivated automatically, as the vehicle is stopping uphill on an incline greater than 10%. In this condition, be prepared to take control of the vehicle.

Note that applying the brake deactivates the system.

## Radar unit



The radar unit is mounted behind the radiator grille behind or below the brand emblem.

Number plate mounting ⇨ 220.

### ⚠ Warning

The radar unit was aligned carefully during manufacture. Therefore, in the event of a front-end impact, do not use the system. The front bumper may appear to be intact, however the sensor behind can be out of position and react incorrectly. After an accident, consult a workshop to verify and adjust the radar unit position.

## Settings

Settings can be changed in the vehicle personalisation menu in the Info Display.

Select the relevant setting in **Settings** ♦ **Vehicle** in the Info Display.

Info Display ⇨ 119.

Vehicle personalisation ⇨ 122.

## Fault

If the adaptive cruise control does not work due to temporary conditions (e.g. blockage by ice, overheated brakes or low speed manoeuvres) or if there is a permanent system error, then a message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

Vehicle messages ⇨ 120.

## Forward collision alert


The forward collision alert may help to avoid or reduce the harm caused by front-end crashes.

If the vehicle is equipped with conventional cruise control, the forward collision alert uses the front camera in the windscreen to detect a vehicle directly ahead, in your path.

If the vehicle is equipped with adaptive cruise control, the forward collision alert uses the radar sensor to detect a vehicle directly ahead, in your path.

Number plate mounting ⇨ 220



A vehicle ahead is indicated by the control indicator .

If a vehicle directly ahead is approached too quickly, a warning chime and alert in the Driver Information Centre is provided.


A precondition is that forward collision alert with front camera system or radar sensor is not deactivated in the vehicle personalisation menu ⇨ 122.


### Activation

Forward collision alert with front camera detects vehicles to distances and operates automatically at all speeds above walking speed.

Forward collision alert with radar sensor detects vehicles to distances and operates automatically at all speeds above walking speed.

## Alerting the driver

The vehicle ahead control indicator  illuminates green in the instrument cluster when the system has detected a vehicle in the driving path.

The control indicator  changes to yellow when the distance to a preceding moving vehicle gets too small or when approaching another vehicle too rapidly.

### Caution



The colour lighting of this control indicator does not correspond to local traffic laws on following distance. The driver bears full responsibility for maintaining safe following distance according to applicable traffic rules, weather and road conditions etc. at all times.

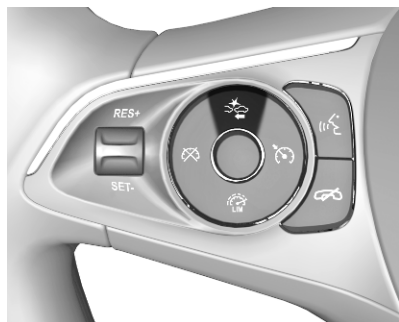


When the time to a potential collision with a vehicle in front gets too small and a collision is imminent, the collision alert symbol pops-up in the Driver Information Centre and the driver gets notified by a warning chime sound.

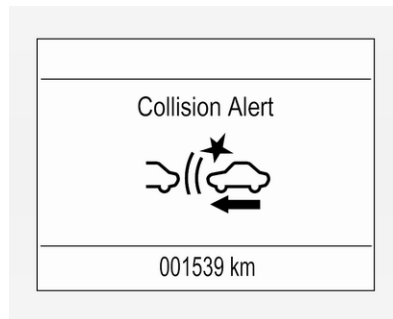
Depress the brake pedal and steer the vehicle, if it is required by the situation.

### Selecting the alert sensitivity

Press  or  to set the alert sensitivity to near, medium or far.




The first button press shows the current setting on the Driver Information Centre. Additional button presses will change this setting. The chosen setting will remain until it is changed. The alert timing will vary based on vehicle speed. The faster the vehicle speed, the farther away the alert will occur. Consider traffic and weather conditions when selecting the alert timing.



Note that the alert timing sensitivity setting is shared with the following distance setting of the adaptive cruise control. So changing the alert timing

sensitivity changes the adaptive cruise control following distance setting.

### Deactivation

The system can be deactivated by the personalisation menu  122.

If the forward collision alert was deactivated, alert sensitivity is set to "medium" when ignition is switched on next time.

The last selected setting will be stored when the ignition is switched off.

### General information

#### Warning

Forward collision alert is just a warning system and does not apply the brakes. When approaching a vehicle ahead too rapidly, it may not provide you enough time to avoid a collision.

The driver accepts full responsibility for the appropriate following distance based on traffic, weather and visibility conditions.



The complete attention of the driver is always required while driving. The driver must always be ready to take action and apply the brakes.

### System limitations

Forward collision alert is designed to warn on vehicles only, but may react also to other objects.


In the following cases, forward collision alert may not detect a vehicle ahead or sensor performance is limited:

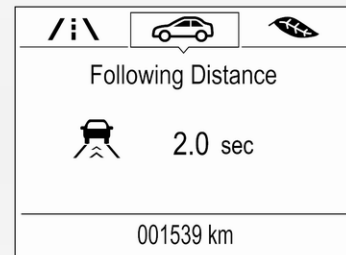
- driving on winding or hilly roads
- during nighttime driving
- weather limits visibility, such as fog, rain, or snow
- the sensor in the windscreen is blocked by snow, ice, slush, mud, dirt, windscreen damage or affected by foreign items, e.g. stickers


## Following distance indication

The following distance indication displays the distance to a preceding moving vehicle. The front camera in the windscreen is used to detect the distance of a vehicle directly ahead in the vehicle's path. It is active at speeds above 40 km/h. Number plate mounting ⇨ 220

When a preceding vehicle is detected ahead, the distance is indicated in seconds, displayed on a page in the Driver Information Centre.

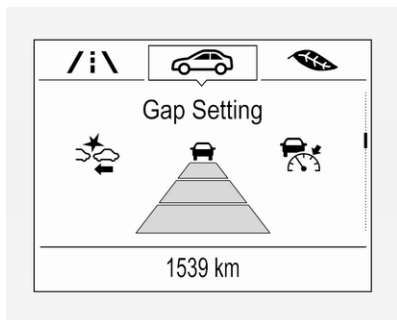
On Midlevel display, choose **Info** Menu  via **MENU** on the indicator lever and turn the adjuster wheel to choose following distance indication page ⇨ 113



On Uplevel display, select **Info** menu via steering wheel buttons and press  to select following distance indication ⇨ 113.

The minimum indicated distance is 0.5 seconds.

If there is no vehicle ahead or the vehicle ahead is out of range, two dashes will be displayed: -- sec.



If Adaptive cruise control is active, this page shows the alert sensitivity setting instead of following distance setting ⇨ 177.

## Active emergency braking

Active emergency braking can help to reduce the damage and injury from crashes with vehicles and obstacles directly ahead, when a collision can no longer be avoided either by manual braking or by steering. Before the active emergency braking applies, the driver is warned by the forward collision alert ⇨ 185.

The feature uses various inputs (e.g. camera sensor, radar sensor, brake pressure, vehicle speed) to calculate the probability of a frontal collision.

### Warning

This system is not intended to replace the driver responsibility for driving the vehicle and looking ahead. Its function is limited to supplemental use only to reduce the vehicle speed before a collision.

The system may not react for animals. After a sudden lane change, the system needs a certain time to detect the next preceding vehicle.

The driver shall always be ready to take action and apply the brakes and steer to avoid collisions.

### Functionality

If equipped only with front camera the active emergency braking operates in forward gear above walking speed up to 80 km/h.

With radar sensor active emergency braking operates in forward gear above walking speed at all speeds.

Number plate mounting ⇨ 220.

A precondition is that forward collision alert is not deactivated in the vehicle personalisation menu ⇨ 122.

The system includes:

- brake preparation system
- emergency automatic braking
- forward looking brake assist
- intelligent brake assist (only with radar sensor)


### Brake preparation system

When approaching a vehicle ahead so quickly that a collision is likely, the brake preparation system slightly pressurises the brakes. This reduces the response time, when a manual or automatic braking is requested.

The brake system is prepared so that braking can occur more rapidly.

If equipped only with front camera the system operates up to a speed of 80 km/h.

## Emergency automatic braking

After activation of brake preparation system and just before the imminent collision, this function automatically applies limited braking to reduce the impact speed of the collision or prohibit a crash. Depending on the situation, the vehicle may automatically brake moderately or hard. This front automatic braking can only occur if a vehicle ahead is detected, indicated by the vehicle ahead indicator  185.

If equipped only with front camera the system operates up to a speed of 80 km/h.

Below a speed of 40 km/h the system can apply full braking.

Emergency automatic braking may slow the vehicle to a complete stop to try to avoid a potential crash. If this happens, emergency automatic braking may engage the electric parking brake to hold the vehicle at a stop. To release press the electric parking brake button or firmly press the accelerator pedal.

### Warning

Emergency automatic braking is an emergency crash preparation feature and is not designed to avoid crashes. Do not rely on the system to brake the vehicle. Emergency automatic braking will not brake outside of its operating speed range and only responds to detected vehicles.

## Forward looking brake assist

In addition to the brake preparation system and emergency automatic braking, the forward looking brake assist function makes the brake assist more sensitive. Therefore, pressing the brake pedal less strongly results in immediate hard braking. This function helps the driver brake quicker and harder before the imminent collision.

If equipped only with front camera the system operates up to a speed of 85 km/h.

### Warning

Active emergency braking is not designed to apply hard autonomous braking or to automatically avoid a collision. It is designed to reduce the vehicle speed before a collision. It may not react for pedestrians or animals. After a sudden lane change, the system needs a certain time to detect the next preceding vehicle.

The complete attention of the driver is always required while driving. The driver shall always be ready to take action and apply the brakes and steer to avoid collisions. The system is designed to work with all occupants wearing their seat belts.

## Intelligent Brake Assist

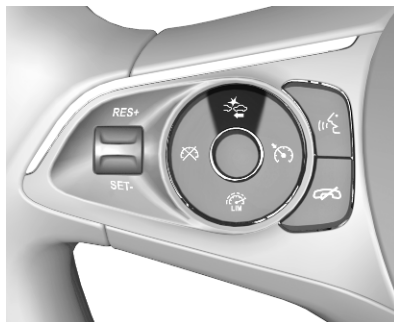
If the vehicle is equipped with radar sensor Intelligent brake assist may activate when the brake pedal is applied quickly by providing a boost to braking based on the speed of approach and distance to a vehicle ahead.



Minor brake pedal pulsations or pedal movement during this time is normal and the brake pedal should continue to be applied as needed. Intelligent brake assist will automatically disengage only when the brake pedal is released.


### **Warning**

Intelligent brake assist may increase vehicle braking in situations when it may not be necessary. You could block the flow of traffic. If this occurs, take your foot off the brake pedal and then apply the brakes as needed.

### **Deactivation**



On vehicles with front camera active emergency braking can be deactivated by repeatedly pressing the gap switch  to **Off** setting,  185. If deactivated a message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

On vehicles with radar sensor the system can be disabled in the personalisation menu in the Info Display  122.

We recommend to deactivate the system or set it to alert only in the following cases:

- when the vehicle is being towed
- if a trailer is attached to the vehicle
- before using an automatic car wash with ignition switched on
- if the windscreen has been damaged close to the camera
- if the front bumper has been damaged

### **System limitations**

In some cases, the active emergency braking system may provide an automatic braking in situations that seem to be unnecessary, for instance in parking garages, due to traffic signs in a curve or due to vehicles in another lane. This is normal operation, the vehicle does not need service. Firmly apply the accelerator pedal to override the automatic braking if the situation and the surroundings permit.

In the following cases, Active emergency braking performance is limited:

- Driving on winding or hilly roads.
- Detecting all vehicles, especially vehicles with a trailer, tractors, muddy vehicles, etc.
- Detecting a vehicle when weather limits visibility, such as in fog, rain, or snow.
- During nighttime driving.
- Weather limits visibility, such as fog, rain, or snow.
- The sensor in the windscreen is blocked by snow, ice, slush, mud, dirt, windscreen damage or stickered.

To avoid malfunction keep the areas of the camera sensor in the windscreen and the radar sensor in the radiator grille always clean from dirt, dust, ice and snow.

Complete attention is always required while driving, and you should be ready to take action and apply the brakes and / or steer the vehicle to avoid crashes.

## Fault

In case the system requires a service, a message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

If the system does not work as it should do, vehicle messages are displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

Vehicle messages ⇨ 120.

## Front pedestrian protection

Front pedestrian protection may help to avoid or reduce the harm caused by front-end crashes with nearby pedestrians when driving in a forward gear.

The system uses the front camera in the windscreen to detect a pedestrian directly ahead, in your path.

Front pedestrian protection can detect and alert to pedestrians in a forward gear at speeds between 8 km/h and 80 km/h. Additionally Front pedestrian protection can provide a boost to braking or automatically brake the vehicle.

During daytime driving, the system detects pedestrians up to a distance of approx. 40 m. During nighttime driving, system performance is limited.

Front pedestrian protection can be set to **Off**, **Alert**, or **Alert & Brake** in vehicle personalisation ⇨ 122.

### Danger

Front pedestrian braking does not provide an alert or automatically brake the vehicle, unless it detects a pedestrian.


The system may not detect pedestrians, including children, when the pedestrian is not directly ahead, not fully visible, not standing upright, or when part of a group.

Front pedestrian protection includes:

- detecting front pedestrian ahead
- front pedestrian alert
- automatic braking

## Detecting front pedestrian ahead



A pedestrian ahead up to a distance of approx. 40 m is indicated by the control indicator  in the instrument cluster.

## Front pedestrian alert




When approaching a detected pedestrian too quickly, the collision alert symbol pops up in the Driver Information Centre. A warning chime is provided. The brake system may prepare for driver braking to occur more rapidly which can cause a brief, mild deceleration. Continue to apply the brake pedal as required.

Cruise control or Adaptive cruise control may be disengaged when the Front pedestrian alert occurs.

## Automatic braking


If a crash into a pedestrian directly ahead is imminent, and the brakes have not been applied, Automatic braking may automatically brake moderately or brake hard. This can help to avoid some very low speed pedestrian crashes or reduce pedestrian injury.

Automatic braking levels may be reduced under certain conditions, such as higher speeds.

If this happens, automatic braking may engage the Electric parking brake to hold the vehicle at a stop. Release the parking brake. Pressing the accelerator pedal will also release Automatic braking and Electric parking brake  169.

This system includes Intelligent brake assist, and the Emergency automatic braking system may also respond to pedestrians.

Active emergency braking  188.

Automatic braking can be disabled in the vehicle personalisation menu  122.

## General information

### Warning

The driver must always be ready to take action and apply the brakes and steer to avoid collisions.

### Warning

Front pedestrian braking may alert or automatically brake the vehicle suddenly in situations where it is unexpected and undesired. It could falsely alert or brake for objects similar in shape or size to pedestrians, including shadows. This is normal operation and the vehicle does not need a service. To override Automatic braking, firmly depress the accelerator pedal, if it is safe to do so.

### ⚠ Warning

Using the Front pedestrian braking system while towing a trailer could cause loss of vehicle control and crash. Turn the system to Alert or Off in the vehicle personalisation when towing a trailer.

Vehicle personalisation ⇨ 122.

### System limitations

In the following cases, front pedestrian protection may not detect a pedestrian ahead or sensor performance is limited:

- Vehicle speed is out of range from 8 km/h to 80 km/h in forward gear.
- The distance to an pedestrian ahead is more than 40 m.
- Driving on winding or hilly roads.
- During nighttime driving.

- Weather limits visibility, such as fog, rain, or snow.
- The sensor in the windscreen is blocked by snow, ice, slush, mud, dirt, windscreen damage or affected by foreign items, e.g. stickers.

## Parking assist

### General information

When the trailer hitch is attached, change the configuration settings in the vehicle personalisation menu in the Info Display.

Vehicle personalisation ⇨ 122.

When attaching a trailer or bike carrier to the trailer hitch, the parking assist is deactivated.

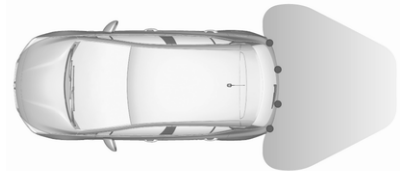
### Rear parking assist

### ⚠ Warning

It is the driver who bears full responsibility for the parking manoeuvre.

Always check the surrounding area while reversing and using the rear parking assist system.


The rear parking assist makes parking easier by measuring the distance between the vehicle and rear obstacles. It informs and warns the driver by giving acoustic signals and display indication.



The system has four ultrasonic parking sensors in the rear bumper.

### Activation


After ignition is switched on, the rear parking assist is activated.

An illuminated LED in the parking assist button **P**  indicates that the system is ready to operate.

### Indication

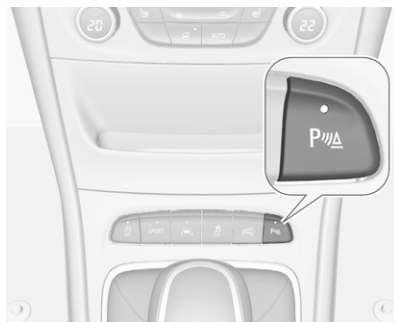
The system warns the driver with acoustic signals against potentially hazardous obstacles behind the vehicle in a distance range up to 50 cm while a forward gear is engaged, or up to 1.5 m while reverse gear is engaged.


Depending on which side of the vehicle is closer to an obstacle, you will hear acoustic warning signals in the vehicle on the respective side. The interval between the signals becomes shorter as the vehicle gets closer to that obstacle. When the distance is less than approx. 40 cm, the signal is continuous.

Additionally, the distance to rear obstacles is displayed by changing distance lines in the Driver Information Centre  113.

The distance indication can be inhibited by vehicle messages with a higher priority. After dismissing the message distance indication appears again.

### Deactivation



Press parking assist button **P**  to deactivate, the LED in the button extinguishes.

### Fault

In the event of a fault or if the system does not work temporarily, e.g. because of high external noise level or other interference factors, the LED in the button flashes for

three seconds and then extinguishes. A message is indicated in the Driver Information Centre.

### Front-rear parking assist

#### Warning

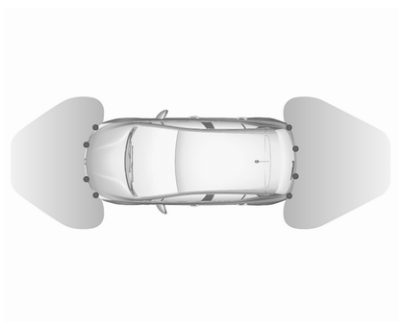
The driver bears full responsibility for the parking manoeuvre.

Always check the surrounding area when driving backwards or forwards while using parking assist system.

The front-rear parking assist measures the distance between the vehicle and obstacles in front and behind the vehicle. It informs and warns the driver by giving acoustic signals and display indication.

It uses two different acoustic warning signals for the front and rear monitoring areas, each with a different tone frequency.

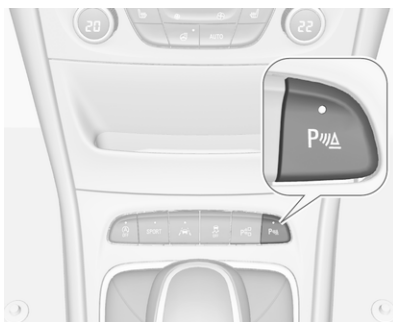




The system has four ultrasonic parking sensors each in the rear and front bumper.

### Activation

The system is activated automatically at a speed up to 11 km/h.



An illuminated LED in the parking assist button **P**▲ indicates that the system is ready to operate.

If **P**▲ is switched off within an ignition cycle, the parking assist is deactivated. If vehicle speed has exceeded 25 km/h beforehand, parking assist will be reactivated when speed drops below 11 km/h.

When the system is deactivated, the LED in the button extinguishes and a message pops up in the Driver Information Centre.

### Indication

The system warns the driver with acoustic and visual signals against potentially hazardous obstacles in front of the vehicle in a distance range up to 120 cm and against potentially hazardous obstacles behind the vehicle in a distance range up to 50 cm while a forward gear is engaged, or up to 150 cm while reverse gear is engaged.

Depending on which side of the vehicle is closer to an obstacle, you will hear acoustic warning signals in the vehicle on the respective side. The interval between the signals becomes shorter as the vehicle gets closer to that obstacle. When the distance is less than approx. 40 cm, the signal is continuous.


Additionally, the distance to rear and front obstacles is displayed by changing distance lines in the Driver Information Centre ⇨ 113 or, depending on the version, on the Info Display ⇨ 119.




The distance indication can be inhibited by vehicle messages with a higher priority. After dismissing the message distance indication appears again.

### Deactivation

The system is deactivated automatically when vehicle speed exceeds 11 km/h.

Manual deactivation is also possible by pressing the parking assist button **P** .

When the system is deactivated manually, the LED in the button extinguishes and a message pops up in the Driver Information Centre.

After a manual deactivation, the front-rear parking assist is activated again if **P**  is pressed or if reverse gear is engaged.

The complete system can be manually deactivated in the vehicle personalisation menu in the Info Display. It remains deactivated during the ignition cycle or until activation in personalisation menu again.

Vehicle personalisation ⇨ 122.

### Fault

In the event of a fault or if the system does not work temporarily, e.g. because of high external noise level or other interference factors, a message pops-up in the Driver Information Centre.

Vehicle messages ⇨ 120.

## Advanced parking assist

### Warning

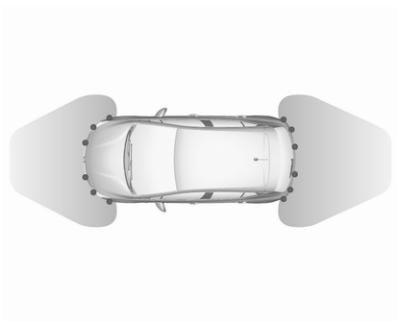
The driver bears full responsibility for accepting the parking slot suggested by the system and the parking manoeuvre.

Always check the surrounding area in all directions when using the advanced parking assist.

The advanced parking assist measures a suitable parking slot while passing, calculates the trajectory and automatically steers the vehicle into a parallel or perpendicular parking slot.

Instructions are given in the Driver Information Centre ⇨ 113 or, depending on the version, on the Info Display ⇨ 119, supported by acoustic signals.

The driver must control acceleration, braking and gear shifting, while steering is done automatically.



Advanced parking assist is always combined with front-rear parking assist. Both systems use the same sensors in the front and rear bumper. The system has six ultrasonic parking sensors each in both the rear and front bumper.

#### Activation of advanced parking assist

Advanced parking assist can only be activated when driving forwards.



When searching for a parking slot, the system is ready to operate with a short press of .

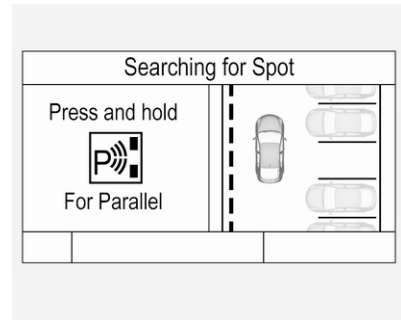
The system recognises and memorises 10 m for parallel parking slots or 6 m for perpendicular parking slots in the parking assist mode.

The system can only be activated and searches for a parking slot at a speed up to 30 km/h.

The maximum allowed parallel distance between the vehicle and a row of parked cars is 150 cm.

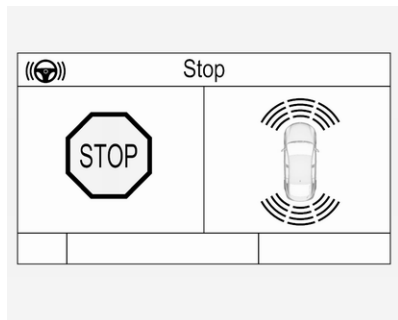
#### Functionality

**Parking slot searching mode, indication in the Driver Information Centre**



Select parallel or perpendicular parking slot in Driver Information Centre by long press on .

The system is configured to detect parking slots by default on the passenger side. To detect parking slots on the driver side, switch on the turn lights on the driver side.



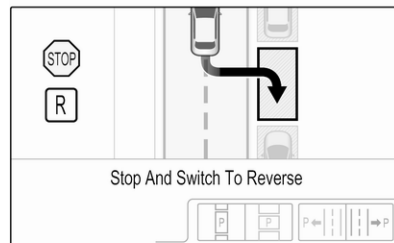
When a slot is detected, a visual feedback in the Driver Information Centre and an acoustic signal is given.

### Indication in the Info Display



Select parallel or perpendicular parking slot by tapping the respective icon on the display.

Select parking side by tapping the respective icon on the display.



When a slot is detected, a visual feedback on the Info Display and an acoustic signal is given.

If the driver does not stop the vehicle after a parking slot is proposed, the system starts to search for another suitable parking slot.

### Park guiding mode

The parking slot suggestion of the system is accepted when the vehicle is stopped by the driver within ten metres for parallel parking slots or six metres for perpendicular parking slots after the message to stop the car is indicated. The system calculates the optimal path into the parking slot.

A brief vibration in the steering wheel after engaging reverse gear indicates that the steering is controlled by the system. Then the vehicle is steered into the slot automatically by giving the driver detailed instructions for braking, accelerating and gear shifting. The driver must keep hands away from the steering wheel.

Always pay attention to the signals of the front-rear parking assist.

Continuous signal indicates that the distance to an obstacle is less than approx. 40 cm.

If, for any reason, the driver must take over control of the steering, hold the steering wheel only at the outer edge. Automatic steering is cancelled in this event.

### Display indication

The instructions on the display show:

- General hints and warning messages.
- A hint when driving faster than 30 km/h during parking slot searching mode.
- The demand to stop the vehicle, when a parking slot is detected.


- The direction of driving during the parking manoeuvre.
- The demand to shift into reverse or first gear.
- The demand to stop or to drive slowly.
- For some of the instructions a progress bar is shown in the Driver Information Centre.
- The successful completion of the parking manoeuvre indicated by a message in the Driver Information Centre and a chime.
- The cancelling of a parking manoeuvre.

### Display priorities

Advanced parking assist indication in the Driver Information Centre can be inhibited by vehicle messages with a higher priority. After approving the message by pressing **SET/CLR** on the indicator lever or **✓** on the steering wheel, advanced parking assist instructions appear again and the parking manoeuvre can be continued.

### Deactivation

The system is deactivated by:


- a short press of 
- parking manoeuvre successfully ended
- driving faster than 30 km/h during parking slot search
- driving faster than 8 km/h during parking guidance
- driver interference on steering wheel detected
- exceeding the maximum permissible gear changes of eleven
- switching off the ignition

Deactivation by the driver or by the system during manoeuvring will be indicated by a message on the display. Additionally, an acoustic signal sounds.

### Fault

A message appears when:

- There is a fault in the system.
- The system is not operational.
- Any of the deactivation reasons described above apply.

If an object is detected during parking instructions, a message to stop the vehicle is indicated. Removing the object will resume the parking manoeuvre. If the object is not removed, the system will be deactivated. A long press of  will activate the system and search for a new parking slot.

### Basic notes on parking assist systems

#### Warning

Under certain circumstances, various reflective surfaces on objects or clothing as well as external noise sources may cause the system to fail to detect obstacles.

Special attention must be paid to low obstacles which can damage the lower part of the bumper.

#### Caution

Performance of the system can be reduced when sensors are covered, e.g. by ice or snow.

Performance of the parking assist system can be reduced due to heavy loading.

Special conditions apply if there are taller vehicles in the vicinity (e.g. off-road vehicles, mini vans, vans). Object identification and correct distance indication in the upper part of these vehicles cannot be guaranteed.

Objects with a very small reflection cross-section, e.g. objects of narrow size or soft materials, may not be detected by the system.

Parking assist systems do not detect objects outside the detection range.

#### Note

It is possible that the sensor detects a non-existing object caused by echo disturbance from external

acoustic noise or mechanical misalignments (sporadic false warnings may occur).

Make sure that the front number plate is properly mounted (not bent and no gaps to the bumper on the left or right side) and the sensors are firmly in place. The performance of the parking assist could be reduced if a number plate holder is used.

Advanced parking assist system may not respond to changes in the available parking space after initiating a parking manoeuvre. The system may recognize an entry, a gateway, a courtyard or even a crossing as a parking slot. After selecting reverse gear the system will start a parking manoeuvre.

Low curbs and surface irregularities, e.g. on construction zones, are not detected by the system. The driver accepts responsibility.

#### Note

After production, the system requires a calibration. For optimal parking guidance, a driving distance of at least 10 km, including a number of bends, is required.

## Side blind spot alert

The Side blind spot alert system detects and reports objects on either side of the vehicle, within a specified "blind spot" zone. The system displays a visual alert in each exterior mirror, when detecting objects that may not be visible in the interior and exterior mirrors.

Side blind spot alert uses some of the advanced parking assist sensors which are located in the front and rear bumper on both sides of the vehicle.



### Warning

Side blind spot alert does not replace driver vision.


The system does not detect:

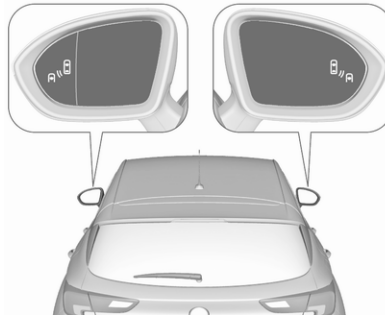
- vehicles outside the side blind zones which may be rapidly approaching
- pedestrians, cyclists or animals



Before changing a lane, always check all mirrors, look over the shoulder and use the turn lights.

When the system detects a vehicle in the side blind zone while driving forwards, either while passing a vehicle or being passed, a yellow warning symbol  will illuminate in the relevant exterior mirror. If the driver then activates the turn lights, the warning symbol  starts flashing yellow as a warning not to change lanes.

### Note

If the overtaking vehicle is at least 10 km/h faster than the vehicle being overtaken, the warning symbol  in the relevant exterior mirror may not illuminate.



Side blind spot alert is active from speeds of 10 km/h up to 140 km/h. Driving faster than 140 km/h deactivates the system, indicated by low lighting warning symbols  in both exterior mirrors. Reducing the speed again will extinguish the warning symbols. If a vehicle is then detected in the blind zone, the warning symbols  will illuminate as normal on the relevant side.

When the vehicle is started, both exterior mirror displays will briefly illuminate to indicate that the system is operating.

The system can be activated or deactivated in the Info Display.

Vehicle personalisation  122.

Deactivation is indicated by a message in the Driver Information Centre.

## Detection zones

The detection zones start at the rear bumper and extend approx. 3 m rearwards and to the sides. The height of the zone is approx. between 0.5 m and 2 m off the ground.

The system is deactivated if the vehicle is towing a trailer or if a bike carrier is attached.

Side blind spot alert is designed to ignore stationary objects, e.g. guardrails, posts, curbs, walls and beams. Parked vehicles or oncoming vehicles are not detected.

## Fault

Occasional missed alerts can occur under normal circumstances and will increase in wet conditions.

Side blind spot alert does not operate when the left or right corners of the rear bumper are covered with mud, dirt, snow, ice, slush, or in heavy rainstorms.

Cleaning instructions ⇨ 265.

In the event of a fault in the system or if the system does not work due to temporary conditions, the symbols in the mirrors will be permanently illuminated and a message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre. Seek the assistance of a workshop.

## Rear view camera

The rear view camera assists the driver when reversing by displaying a view of the area behind the vehicle.

The view of the camera is displayed in the Info Display.

### ⚠ Warning

The rear view camera does not replace driver vision. Note that objects that are outside the camera's field of view and the parking assist sensors, e.g. below the bumper or underneath the vehicle, are not displayed.

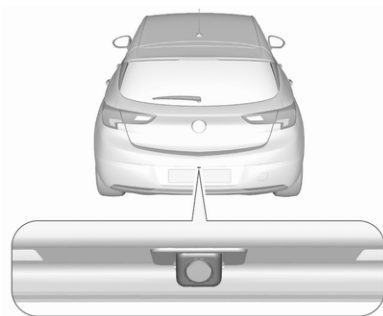
Do not reverse or park the vehicle using only the rear view camera.

Always check the surrounding of the vehicle before driving.

## Activation

Rear view camera is automatically activated when reverse gear is engaged.

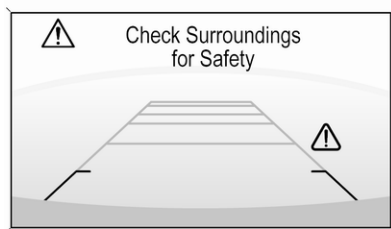
## Functionality



On 5-door hatchback the camera is mounted between the number plate lights.

On Sports Tourer the camera is mounted under the tailgate moulding.

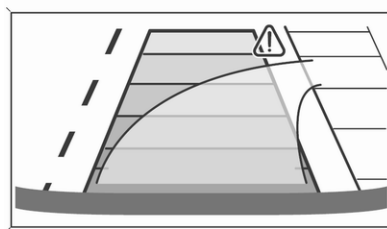




The area displayed by the camera is limited. The distance of the image that appears on the display differs from the actual distance.


### Guiding lines


Dynamic guiding lines are horizontal lines at one metre intervals projected onto the picture to define the distance to displayed objects.



Trajectory lane of the vehicle is shown in accordance with the steering angle.

### Warning symbols

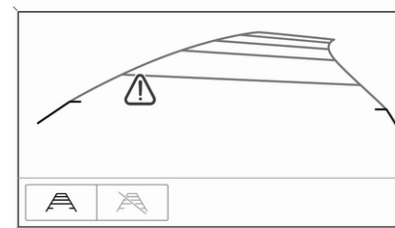
Warning symbols are indicated as triangles  on the picture, which show obstacles detected by the rear sensors of the advanced parking assist.

Additionally,  appears on the top line of the Info Display with the warning to check the vehicle surrounding.

### Deactivation

The camera is switched off when a certain forward speed is exceeded or if reverse gear is not engaged for approx. 15 seconds.

### Deactivation of guiding lines and warning symbols



7" Colour Info Display: Activation or deactivation of the visual guiding lines and the warning symbols can be changed via touch buttons in the lower zone of the display.

8" Colour Info Display: Activation or deactivation of the visual guiding lines and the warning symbols can be

changed in the Settings menu in the Info Display. Select the relevant setting in **Settings ▶ Rear Camera**.


Info Display ↗ 119.

Vehicle personalisation ↗ 122.

## System limitations

The rear view camera may not operate properly when:

- The surrounding is dark.
- The sun or the beam of headlights is shining directly into the camera lenses.
- During nighttime driving.
- Weather limits visibility, such as fog, rain, or snow.
- The camera lenses are blocked by snow, ice, slush, mud, dirt. Clean the lense, rinse with water, and wipe with a soft cloth.
- The vehicle is towing a trailer.
- The vehicle had a rear end accident.
- There are extreme temperature changes.

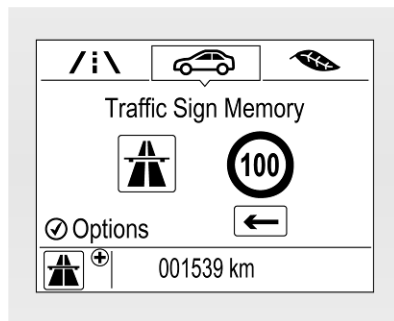
Fault messages are displayed with a  on the top line of the Info Display.

## Traffic sign assistant

### Functionality

Traffic sign assistant detects designated traffic signs via a front camera and displays them in the Driver Information Centre.

If the vehicle is equipped with an embedded navigation system, traffic signs from data maps may be included additionally.



Traffic signs, which will be detected, are:

### Limit and no passing signs

- speed limit
- no passing
- end of speed limit
- end of no passing

### Road signs

Beginning and end of:

- city regions (country-specific)
- motorways
- A-roads
- play streets

### Add on signs

- additional hints to traffic signs
- restriction of trailer towing
- tractor constraints
- wet warning
- ice warning
- time constraints
- distance constraints
- direction arrows

Speed limit signs and no passing signs are displayed in the Driver Information Centre until the next

speed limit sign or end of speed limit is detected or up to a defined sign timeout.



Indication of multiple signs on the display is possible.



An exclamation mark in a frame indicates that there is an additional sign detected which cannot be clearly identified by the system.

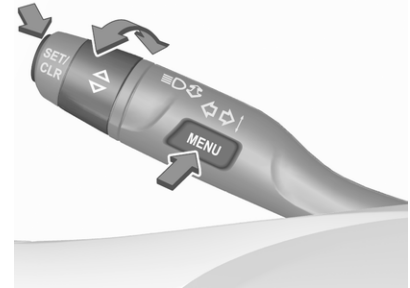
The system operates without loss of performance up to a speed of 200 km/h depending on the lighting conditions. At night the system is active up to a speed of 160 km/h.



## Display indication

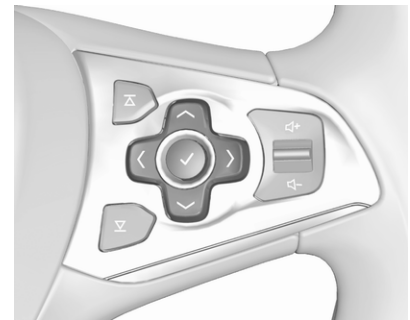
Information about the currently valid traffic signs is available on the designated traffic sign assistant page in the Driver Information Centre.



Additionally, the currently valid speed limit is displayed permanently in the lower line of the Driver Information Centre. In case a speed limit with add on sign is available, a + symbol is displayed in this area.



On Midlevel display, choose **Info** Menu  via **MENU** and select traffic sign assistant page with the adjuster wheel on the indicator lever  113.



On Uplevel display, choose **Info** Menu via right steering wheel buttons and press  $\vee$  or  $\wedge$  to select traffic sign assistant page  $\rightarrow$  113.

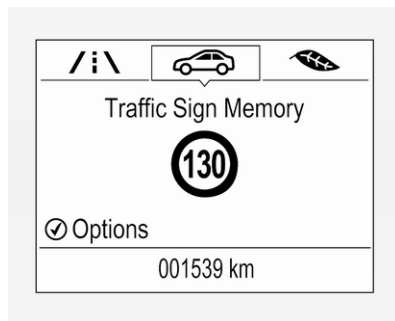
When another page on the Driver Information Centre menu was selected and then traffic sign assistant page is chosen again, the last recognised traffic sign will be displayed.

### Alert function

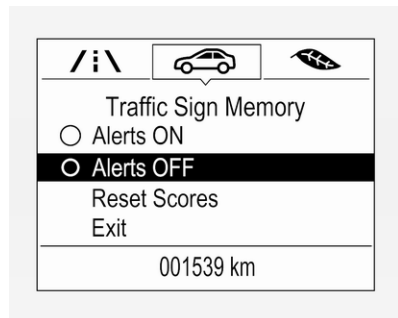
The alert function can be activated or deactivated in the setting menu of the traffic sign assistant page.



Once activated and when the traffic sign detection page is currently not displayed, newly detected speed limit and no passing signs are displayed as pop-up alerts in the Driver Information Centre.

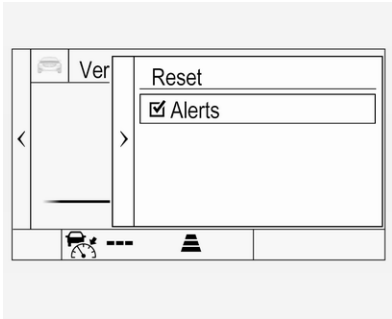


On Midlevel Display, when traffic sign assistant page is displayed, press **SET/CLR** on the indicator lever.



Select **Alerts ON** or **Alerts OFF** by turning the adjuster wheel and press **SET/CLR**.

On Uplevel Display, when traffic sign assistant page is displayed, press  $\rightarrow$  on the steering wheel controls.



Activate alerts by setting ☒, deactivate alerts by setting ☐ via button **✓**.

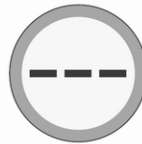
Pop-up alert is displayed for approx. 8 seconds in the Driver Information Centre.

### System reset

The content of the traffic sign display can be cleared in the setting menu of the traffic sign assistant page by selecting **Reset** and confirm by pressing **SET/CLR** on the indicator lever or **✓** on the steering wheel controls.

Alternatively, SET/CLR or **✓** can be pressed for 3 seconds to clear the content of the page.

Upon successful reset, a chime will sound and the following “Default Sign” is indicated until the next traffic sign is detected or provided by map data of the navigation system.



In some cases, traffic sign assistant is cleared up automatically by the system.

### Clearing of traffic signs

There are different scenarios that lead to clearing the currently displayed traffic signs. After clearing, the “Default Sign” or a sign from navigation map data is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

Reasons for signs being cleared:

- A predefined distance was driven or time has elapsed (differs for each sign type)
- Vehicle drives through a turn
- If no navigation map data is available and speed drops below 52 km/h (city entry detection)
- If navigation map data is available and a city entry / exit was detected due to map data change

### Traffic sign detection in conjunction with navigation system

If the vehicle is equipped with a navigation system, the currently displayed sign can either originate from optical sign detection or from the map data.

If the currently displayed sign originates from map data and the map information changes, a new sign will be displayed. This may lead to detection of a new sign although no sign on the road may have been passed.

## System limitations

Traffic sign assistant may not operate properly when:

- Vehicle speed is faster than 200 km/h.
- Driving on winding or hilly roads.
- During nighttime driving.
- The area of the windscreen, where the front camera is located, is not clean or affected by foreign items, e.g. stickers.
- Weather limits visibility, such as fog, rain, or snow.
- The sun is shining directly into the camera lens.
- Traffic signs are completely or partially covered or difficult to discern.
- Traffic signs are incorrectly mounted or damaged.
- Traffic signs do not comply with the Vienna Convention on traffic signs.
- The navigation map data is outdated.

## Caution

The system is intended to help the driver within a defined speed range to discern certain traffic signs. Do not ignore traffic signs which are not displayed by the system.

The system does not discern any other than the conventional traffic signs that might give or end a speed limit.

Do not let this special feature tempt you into taking risks when driving.

Always adapt speed to the road conditions.

The driver assistance systems do not relieve the driver from full responsibility for vehicle operation.

## Lane keep assist

Lane keep assist helps to avoid unintentional lane departures. The front camera observes the lane markings between which the vehicle is driving. If the vehicle approaches

the lane marking unintentionally, the steering wheel is gently turned to position the vehicle back into the lane. Turn steering wheel in same direction, if system steering is not sufficient. Turn steering wheel gently into opposite direction, if lane change is intended.

When crossing a lane marking significantly, lane keep assist starts a visual and acoustic warning.

Unintentional lane departure is assumed

- without using turn lights
- using the turn lights in the opposite direction of the lane departure
- without braking
- without acceleration
- without active steering.


## Note

The system might be inactive when the detected lane markings are ambiguous or insufficient, e.g. in construction areas.



**Note**

The system might be inactive if it detects lanes which are too narrow, too wide or too curved.


**Switching on the system**


The lane keep assist is switched on by engine start or by pressing . The LED in the button illuminates to indicate that the system is switched on.



When the control indicator  in the instrument cluster illuminates green, the system is active and ready to assist. A white  indicates an inactive system.

The system is operational at vehicle speeds between 60 km/h and 180 km/h and if lane markings are available.

The system gently turns the steering wheel and the control indicator  changes to yellow, if the vehicle approaches a detected lane marking without using the turn lights in that direction.

The system alerts by flashing  together with three chimes, from the respective direction, if the lane is departed significantly.

The system is only operable when a lane marking is detected.

If the system only detects lane markings on one side of the road, it will only assist for this side.



If the system performs a correction that lasts longer than 10 seconds, a message pops-up in the Driver

Information Centre and a warning chime sounds until the end of correction.

Lane keep assist detects absence of active steering by the driver. Depending on the duration of absence and the number of corrections by the system a message pops-up in the Driver Information Centre and a warning chime sounds.

The system is deactivated for 3 minutes when the system performed three corrections without detected active steering by the driver, accompanied by a long acoustic warning.

**Switching off the system**

Press , the LED in the button and control indicator  extinguish.

**System limitations**

The system performance may not operate properly when:

- vehicle speed is out of range from 60 to 180 km/h
- driving on winding or hilly roads
- during nighttime driving

- weather limits visibility, such as fog, rain, or snow
- the sensor in the windscreen is blocked by snow, ice, slush, mud, dirt, windscreen damage or affected by foreign items, e.g. stickers
- the sun is shining directly into the camera lens
- close vehicles ahead
- banked roads
- road edges
- roads with poor lane markings
- sudden lighting changes
- vehicle modifications, e.g. tyres

Switch off the system if the system is disturbed by tar marks, shadows, road cracks, temporary or construction lane markings, or other road imperfections.

### ⚠ Warning

Always keep your attention on the road and maintain proper vehicle position within the lane, otherwise vehicle damage, injury or death could occur.

Lane keep assist does not continuously steer the vehicle.

The system may not keep the vehicle in the lane or give an alert, even if a lane marking is detected.

The steering of the lane keep assist may not be sufficient to avoid a lane departure.

The driver has full responsibility to control the vehicle and is always required to keep the hands on the steering wheel while driving.

Using the system while towing a trailer or on slippery roads could cause loss of control of the vehicle and a crash. Switch the system off.

## Fuel

### Fuel for petrol engines



Only use unleaded fuel that complies with European standard EN 228 or equivalent.

The engine is capable of running with fuel that contains up to 10% ethanol (e.g. named E10).

Use fuel with the recommended octane rating. A lower octane rating can reduce engine power and torque and slightly increases fuel consumption.



**Caution**

Do not use fuel or fuel additives that contain metallic compounds such as manganese-based additives. This may cause engine damage.

**Caution**

Use of fuel that does not comply to EN 228 or equivalent can lead to deposits or engine damage.

**Caution**

Use of fuel with a lower octane rating than the lowest possible rating could lead to uncontrolled combustion and engine damage.

The engine-specific requirements regarding octane rating are given in the engine data overview ↗ 277. A country-specific label at the fuel filler flap can supersede the requirement.

**Fuel additive**

Fuel should contain detergent additives that help prevent engine and fuel system deposits from forming. Clean fuel injectors and intake valves will allow the emission control system to work properly. In certain countries fuel does not contain sufficient quantities of additive to keep fuel injectors and intake valves clean. In these countries a fuel additive is required for some engines to make up for this lack of detergency. Only use fuel additive approved for the vehicle.

Adding fuel additive to the filled fuel tank is required at least every 15,000 km or after one year, whichever occurs first. For further information, contact your workshop.


**Prohibited fuels**

Fuels containing oxygenates such as ethers and ethanol, as well as reformulated fuel, are available in some cities. If these fuels comply with the previously described specification, then they are acceptable to use. However, E85

(85% ethanol) and other fuels containing more than 15% ethanol must be used only in FlexFuel vehicles.

**Caution**

Do not use fuel containing methanol. It can corrode metal parts in the fuel system and also damage plastic and rubber parts. This damage would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

Some fuels, mainly high octane racing fuels, can contain an octane enhancing additive called methylcyclopentadienyl manganese tricarbonyl (MMT). Do not use fuels or fuel additives with MMT as they can reduce spark plug life and affect emission control system performance. The malfunction indicator light  may illuminate ↗ 108. If this occurs, seek the assistance of a workshop.

## Fuel for diesel engines

**B7**

Only use diesel fuel that complies with EN 590 and which has a sulphur concentration of max. 10 ppm.

Fuels with a biodiesel (compliant with EN 14214) content of max. 7% by volume may be used (e.g. named B7).

If travelling in countries outside the European Union occasional use of Euro-Diesel fuel with a sulphur concentration below 50 ppm is possible.

### Caution

Frequent usage of diesel fuel containing more than 15 ppm sulphur will cause severe engine damage.

### Caution

Use of fuel that does not comply to EN 590 or similar can lead to engine powerloss, increased wear or engine damage and may affect your warranty.

Do not use marine diesel oils, heating oils, Aquazole and similar diesel-water emulsions. Diesel fuels must not be diluted with fuels for petrol engines.

### Low temperature operation

At temperatures below 0° C, some diesel products with biodiesel blends may clog, freeze or gel, which may affect the fuel supply system. Starting and engine operation may not work properly. Make sure to fill winter grade diesel fuel at ambient temperatures below 0°C.

Arctic grade diesel fuel can be used at extremely low temperatures below -20° C. Using this fuel grade in warm or hot climates is not recommended

and may cause engine stalling, poor starting or damage on the fuel injection system.

## Refuelling



### ⚠ Danger

Before refuelling, switch off ignition and any external heaters with combustion chambers.

Follow the operating and safety instructions of the filling station when refuelling.

**⚠ Danger**

Fuel is flammable and explosive. No smoking. No naked flames or sparks.

If you can smell fuel in your vehicle, have the cause of this remedied immediately by a workshop.

A label with symbols at the fuel filler flap is indicating the allowed fuel types. In Europe the pump nozzles of the filling stations are marked with these symbols. Refuel only the allowed fuel type.

**Caution**

In case of misfuelling, do not switch on ignition.

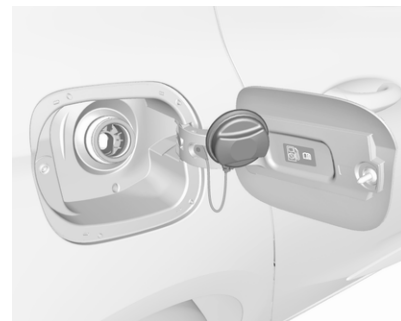
Fuel filler flap is located at right rear side of the vehicle.



The fuel filler flap can only be opened if the vehicle is unlocked. Release the fuel filler flap by pushing the flap.

**Petrol and Diesel refuelling**

To open, turn the cap slowly anticlockwise.



The fuel filler cap can be retained in the bracket on the fuel filler flap.

Place the nozzle in straight position to the filler neck and press with slight force to insert.

To refuel, switch on pump nozzle.

After the automatic cut-off, the tank can be topped up by operating the pump nozzle a maximum of two more times.

**Caution**

Wipe off any overflowing fuel immediately.

To close, turn the fuel filler cap clockwise until it clicks.

Close the flap and engage.

### Misfuel inhibitor

#### **Warning**

Do not try to open the flap of the fuel filler neck manually on vehicles with misfuel inhibitor.

Disregarding this could lead to trapping of the fingers.

The misfuel inhibitor ensures that the flap of the fuel filler neck can only be opened by using the suitable fuel nozzle or a funnel for emergency refilling.

In case of an emergency, refill with a canister. A funnel must be used to open the cap of the filler neck.

The funnel may be stowed in the load compartment or the glovebox.

Place the funnel in straight position to the filler neck and press with slight force to insert.

After topping-up, clean funnel from fuel remains and stow it away.

### Fuel filler cap

Only use genuine fuel filler caps.

Diesel-engined vehicles have special fuel filler caps.

## Trailer hitch

### General information

Only use towing equipment that has been approved for your vehicle.

Entrust retrofitting of towing equipment to a workshop. It may be necessary to make changes that affect the cooling system, heat shields or other equipment.

The bulb outage detection function for trailer brake light cannot detect a partial bulb outage. E.g. in case of four bulbs with a power of 5 W each, the function only detects light outage when only a single 5 W bulb remains or none remain.

Fitting of towing equipment could cover the opening of the towing eye. If this is the case use the coupling ball bar for towing. Always keep the coupling ball bar in the vehicle when not in use.

## Driving characteristics and towing tips

Before attaching a trailer, lubricate the coupling ball. However, do not do so if a stabiliser, which acts on the coupling ball, is being used to reduce snaking movements.

During trailer towing do not exceed a speed of 80 km/h. A maximum speed of 100 km/h is only appropriate if an oscillation damper is used and the permissible gross trailer weight does not exceed the vehicle's curb weight.

For trailers with low driving stability and caravan trailers, the use of an oscillation damper is strongly recommended.

If the trailer starts snaking, drive more slowly, do not attempt to correct the steering and brake sharply if necessary.

When driving downhill, drive in the same gear as if driving uphill and drive at a similar speed.

Adjust tyre pressure to the value specified for full load ⇨ 282.

## Trailer towing

### Trailer loads

The permissible trailer loads are vehicle and engine-dependent maximum values which must not be exceeded. The actual trailer load is the difference between the actual gross weight of the trailer and the actual coupling socket load with the trailer coupled.

The permissible trailer loads are specified in the vehicle documents. In general, they are valid for gradients up to 12%.

The permissible trailer load applies up to the specified incline and at sea level. Since engine power decreases as altitude increases due to the air becoming thinner, therefore reducing climbing ability, the permissible gross train weight also decreases by 10% for every 1000 m of altitude. The gross train weight does not have to be reduced when driving on roads with slight inclines (less than 8%, e.g. motorways).

The permissible gross train weight must not be exceeded. This weight is specified on the identification plate ⇨ 274.

### Vertical coupling load

The vertical coupling load is the load exerted by the trailer on the coupling ball. It can be varied by changing the weight distribution when loading the trailer.

The maximum permissible vertical coupling load is specified on the towing equipment identification plate and in the vehicle documents. Always aim for the maximum load, especially in the case of heavy trailers. The vertical coupling load should never fall below 25 kg.

### Rear axle load

When the trailer is coupled and the towing vehicle fully loaded, the permissible rear axle load (see identification plate or vehicle documents) may be exceeded by 40 kg. If the permissible rear axle load is exceeded, a maximum speed of 100 km/h applies.

## Towing equipment

### Caution

When operating without a trailer, remove the coupling ball bar.

### Stowage of coupling ball bar

The bag with the coupling ball bar is stowed on the rear floor cover in the load compartment.

Place the strap through the rear right lashing eye, wrap around twice and tighten the strap to secure the bag.

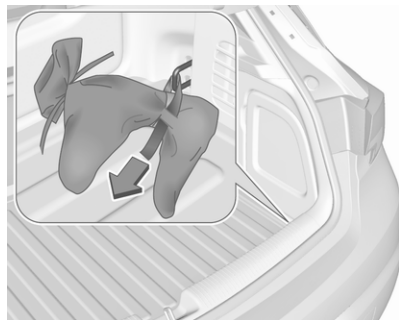


Illustration shows 5-door hatchback.

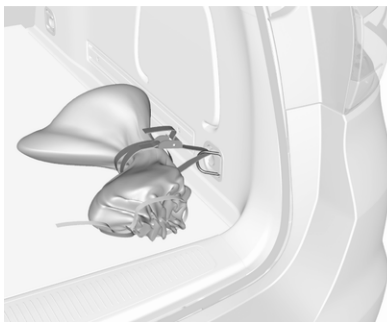
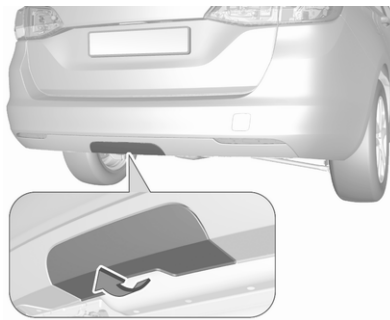


Illustration shows Sports Tourer.

### Fitting the coupling ball bar




On Sports Tourer remove cover from rear bumper by pushing.




Disengage and fold down the connecting socket. Remove the sealing plug from the opening for the coupling ball bar and stow it.

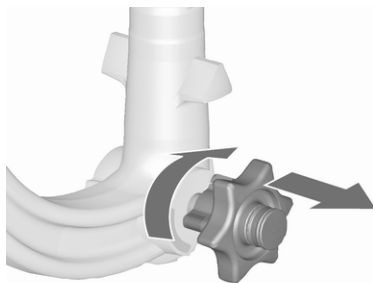
### Checking the tensioning of the coupling ball bar



- Red marking on rotary knob must point towards green marking on coupling ball bar.
- The gap between the rotary knob and the coupling ball bar must be approx. 6 mm.
- The key must be in position .

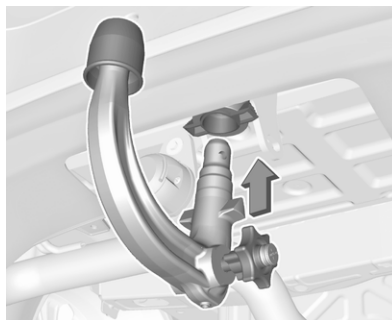
Otherwise, the coupling ball bar must be tensioned before being inserted:

- Unlock coupling ball bar by turning key to position .



- Pull out rotary knob and turn clockwise as far as it will go.

### Inserting the coupling ball bar



Insert the tensioned coupling ball bar in the opening and push firmly upwards until it audibly engages.

The rotary handle snaps back into its original position resting against the coupling ball bar without a gap.

### Warning

Do not touch rotary handle during insertion.

Lock the coupling ball bar by turning the key to position . Remove the key and close the protective flap.

### Eye for break-away stopping cable

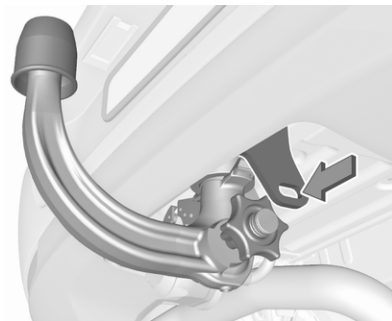


Illustration shows 5-door hatchback.

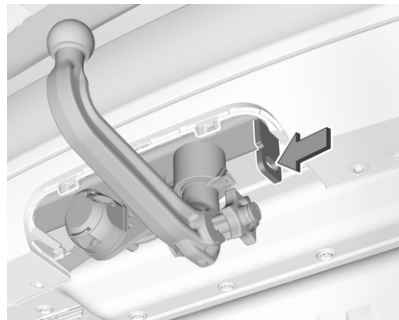


Illustration shows Sports Tourer.  
Attach breakaway stopping cable to eye.

### Check that the coupling ball bar is correctly installed

- Green marking on rotary knob must point towards green marking on coupling ball bar.
- There must be no gap between the rotary handle and the coupling ball bar.


- The coupling ball bar must be firmly engaged in the opening.
- The coupling ball bar must be locked and the key removed.

### Warning

Towing a trailer is permitted only when a coupling ball bar is fitted correctly. If the coupling ball bar does not engage correctly, seek the assistance of a workshop.

### Dismounting the coupling ball bar

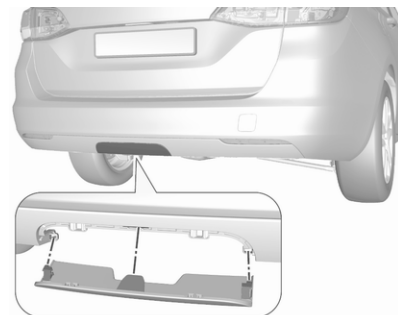


Open the protective flap and turn the key to position  to unlock the coupling ball bar.

Pull out rotary handle and turn clockwise as far as it will go. Pull out coupling ball bar downwards.

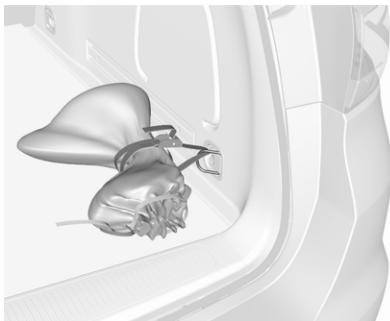
Insert sealing plug in opening.

Fold away connecting socket.



On Sports Tourer insert cover into rear bumper as shown in the illustration.





Stow the coupling ball bar in the bag and secure by fixing the strap through the rear right lashing eye. Wrap around twice and tighten the strap to secure the bag.

## Trailer stability assist

If the system detects snaking movements, engine power is reduced and the vehicle/trailer combination is selectively braked until the snaking ceases. While system is working keep steering wheel as still as possible.

Trailer stability assist is a function of the Electronic Stability Control ↗ 172.

## Vehicle care

|   |            |
|---|------------|
| <b>General Information</b> .....            | <b>220</b> |
| Accessories and vehicle modifications ..... | 220        |
| Vehicle storage .....                       | 221        |
| End-of-life vehicle recovery .....          | 221        |
| <b>Vehicle checks</b> .....                 | <b>222</b> |
| Performing work .....                       | 222        |
| Bonnet .....                                | 222        |
| Engine oil .....                            | 223        |
| Engine coolant .....                        | 224        |
| Washer fluid .....                          | 225        |
| Brakes .....                                | 225        |
| Brake fluid .....                           | 225        |
| Vehicle battery .....                       | 226        |
| Diesel fuel system bleeding .....           | 228        |
| Wiper blade replacement .....               | 228        |
| <b>Bulb replacement</b> .....               | <b>229</b> |
| Halogen headlights .....                    | 229        |
| Front fog lights .....                      | 231        |
| Tail lights .....                           | 231        |
| Side turn lights .....                      | 237        |
| Number plate light .....                    | 238        |
| Interior lights .....                       | 239        |
| <b>Electrical system</b> .....              | <b>239</b> |
| Fuses .....                                 | 239        |

|                                       |            |
|---------------------------------------|------------|
| Engine compartment fuse box ..        | 240        |
| Instrument panel fuse box .....       | 242        |
| Load compartment fuse box ....        | 244        |
| <b>Vehicle tools</b> .....            | <b>246</b> |
| Tools .....                           | 246        |
| <b>Wheels and tyres</b> .....         | <b>247</b> |
| Winter tyres .....                    | 247        |
| Tyre designations .....               | 247        |
| Tyre pressure .....                   | 248        |
| Tyre pressure monitoring system ..... | 249        |
| Tread depth .....                     | 252        |
| Changing tyre and wheel size ..       | 252        |
| Wheel covers .....                    | 252        |
| Tyre chains .....                     | 253        |
| Tyre repair kit .....                 | 253        |
| Wheel changing .....                  | 257        |
| Spare wheel .....                     | 257        |
| <b>Jump starting</b> .....            | <b>261</b> |
| <b>Towing</b> .....                   | <b>263</b> |
| Towing the vehicle .....              | 263        |
| Towing another vehicle .....          | 264        |
| <b>Appearance care</b> .....          | <b>265</b> |
| Exterior care .....                   | 265        |
| Interior care .....                   | 267        |
| Floor mats .....                      | 267        |

## General Information

### Accessories and vehicle modifications

We recommend the use of genuine parts and accessories and factory approved parts specific for your vehicle type. We cannot assess or guarantee reliability of other products - even if they have a regulatory or otherwise granted approval.

Any modification, conversion or other changes made to standard vehicle specifications (including, without limitation, software modifications, modifications of the electronic control units) may invalidate the warranty offered by Opel. Furthermore, such changes may affect driver assistance systems, fuel consumption, CO<sub>2</sub> emissions and other emissions of the vehicle. They may also invalidate the vehicle operating permit.

### Caution

When transporting the vehicle on a train or on a recovery vehicle, the mud flaps might be damaged.

## Number plate mounting



To ensure a proper functionality of the radar system, do not use a number plate support on the front bumper.

## Vehicle storage

### Storage for a long period of time

If the vehicle is to be stored for several months:

- Wash and wax the vehicle.
- Have the wax in the engine compartment and underbody checked.

- Clean and preserve the rubber seals.
- Fill up fuel tank completely.
- Change the engine oil.
- Drain the washer fluid reservoir.
- Check the coolant antifreeze and corrosion protection.
- Adjust tyre pressure to the value specified for full load.
- Park the vehicle in a dry, well ventilated place. Engage first or reverse gear or set selector lever to **P**. Prevent the vehicle from rolling.
- Do not apply the parking brake.
- Open the bonnet, close all doors and lock the vehicle.
- Disconnect the clamp from the negative terminal of the vehicle battery. Note that all systems are not functional, e.g. anti-theft alarm system.

## Putting back into operation

When the vehicle is to be put back into operation:

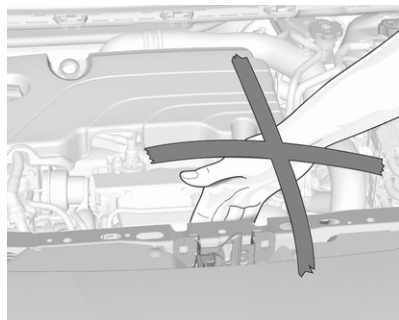
- Connect the clamp to the negative terminal of the vehicle battery. Initialize the power windows ⇨ 43.
- Check tyre pressure.
- Fill up the washer fluid reservoir.
- Check the engine oil level.
- Check the coolant level.
- Fit the number plate if necessary. Number plate mounting ⇨ 220.

## End-of-life vehicle recovery

Information on end-of-life vehicle recovery centres and the recycling of end-of-life vehicles is available on our website, where legally required. Only entrust this work to an authorised recycling centre.

## Vehicle checks

### Performing work



#### **⚠ Warning**

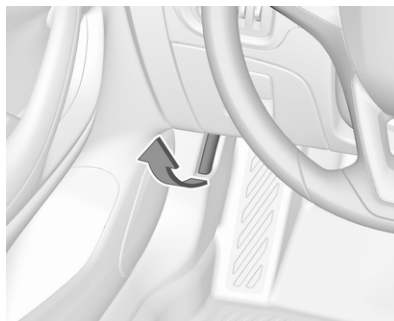
Only perform engine compartment checks when the ignition is off.  
The cooling fan may start operating even if the ignition is off.

#### **⚠ Danger**

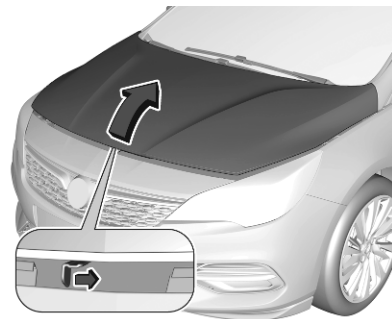
The ignition system uses extremely high voltage. Do not touch.

### Bonnet

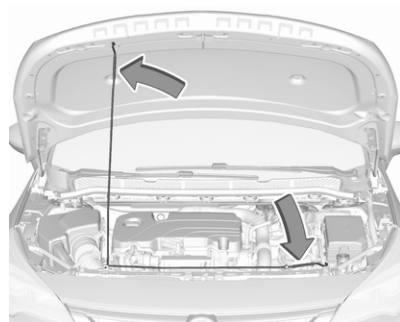
#### Opening



Pull the bonnet release lever and return it to its original position.



Move the safety catch sideways to the left vehicle side and open the bonnet.



Secure the bonnet support.

If the bonnet is opened during an Autostop, the engine will be restarted automatically for safety reasons.

## Closing

Before closing the bonnet, press the support into the holder.

Lower the bonnet and let it fall into the latch from a low height (20-25 cm). Check that the bonnet is engaged.

### Caution

Do not press the bonnet into the latch to avoid dents.

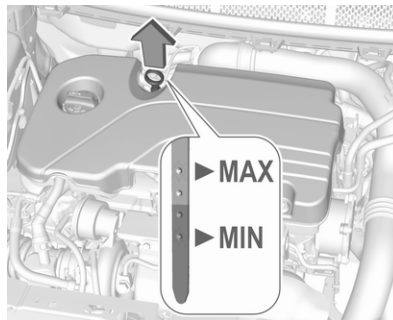
## Engine oil

Check the engine oil level manually on a regular basis to prevent damage to the engine. Ensure that the correct specification of oil is used.

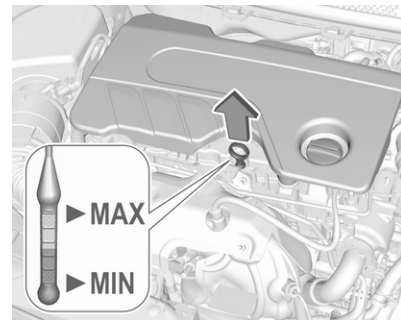
Recommended fluids and lubricants  
⇨ 271.

The maximum engine oil consumption is 0.6 l per 1000 km.

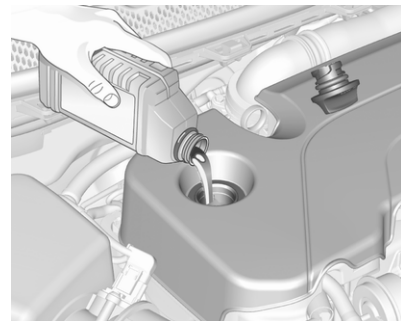
Check with the vehicle on a level surface. The engine must be at operating temperature and switched off for at least 5 minutes.



Pull out the dipstick, wipe it clean, reinsert fully, pull out and read the engine oil level.



Different dipsticks are used depending on engine variant.



When the engine oil level has dropped to the **MIN** mark, top up engine oil.

The engine oil level must not exceed the **MAX** mark on the dipstick.

We recommend the use of the same grade of engine oil that was used at last change.

### Caution

Wipe off any spilled engine oil immediately.

### Caution

Overfilled engine oil must be drained or suctioned out. If the oil exceeds the maximum level, do not start the vehicle and contact a workshop.

Capacities ⇨ 280.

Fit the cap on straight and tighten it.

## Engine coolant

The factory filled coolant provides freeze protection down to approx. -28 °C. In cold regions with very low temperatures, the factory filled coolant provides frost protection down to approx. -37 °C.

### Caution

Only use approved antifreeze.

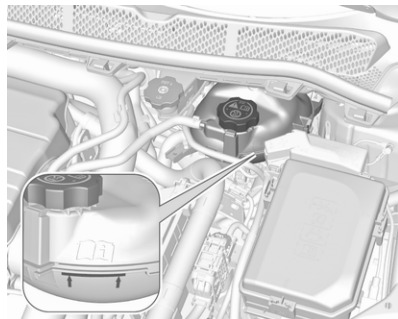
Coolant and antifreeze ⇨ 271.

## Coolant level

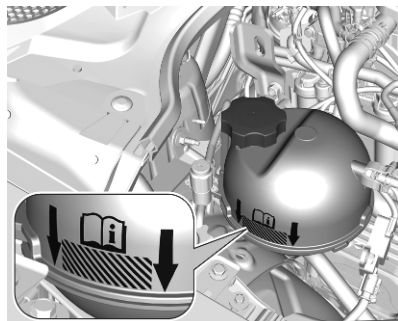
### Caution

Too low a coolant level can cause engine damage.

Depending on version, the vehicle contains one of the following coolant tanks:



If the cooling system is cold, the coolant level should be above the filling line mark. Top up if the level is low.



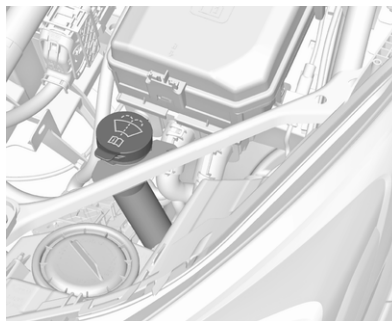
If the cooling system is cold, the coolant level should be in the hatched area. Top up if the level is low.

### **⚠ Warning**

Allow the engine to cool before opening the cap. Carefully open the cap, relieving the pressure slowly.

To top up, use a 1:1 mixture of released coolant concentrate mixed with clean tap water. If no coolant concentrate is available, use clean tap water. Install the cap tightly. Have the coolant concentration checked and have the cause of the coolant loss remedied by a workshop.

## **Washer fluid**



Fill with clean water mixed with a suitable quantity of approved windscreen washer fluid which contains antifreeze.

### **Caution**

Only washer fluid with a sufficient antifreeze concentration provides protection at low temperatures or a sudden drop in temperature.

Washer fluid ⇨ 271.

## **Brakes**

In the event of minimum thickness of the brake lining, a squealing noise sounds during braking.

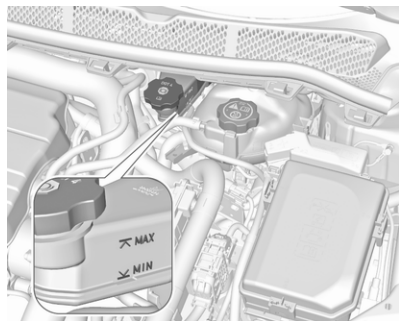
Continued driving is possible but have the brake lining replaced as soon as possible.

Once new brake linings are installed, do not brake unnecessarily hard for the first few journeys.

## **Brake fluid**

### **⚠ Warning**

Brake fluid is poisonous and corrosive. Avoid contact with eyes, skin, fabrics and painted surfaces.

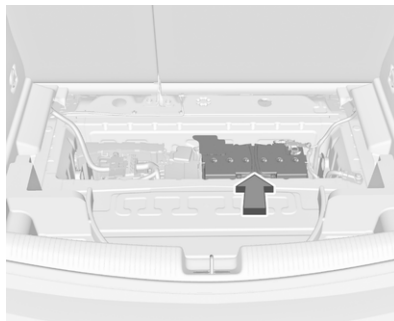


The brake fluid level must be between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks.

If fluid level is below **MIN** seek the assistance of a workshop.

Brake and clutch fluid ⇨ 271.

## Vehicle battery



The vehicle battery is located in the load compartment.

There are connecting points for jump starting ⇨ 261.

The vehicle battery is maintenance-free provided that the driving profile allows sufficient charging of the battery. Short-distance-driving and frequent engine starts can discharge the battery. Avoid the use of unnecessary electrical consumers.



Batteries do not belong in household waste. They must be disposed of at an appropriate recycling collection point.

Laying up the vehicle for more than four weeks can lead to battery discharge. Disconnect the clamp from the negative terminal of the vehicle battery.

Ensure the ignition is switched off before connecting or disconnecting the vehicle battery.

Battery discharge protection ⇨ 138.

### Disconnecting the battery

If the vehicle's battery is to be disconnected (e.g. for maintenance work), the alarm siren must be deactivated as follows: Switch the ignition on then off, then disconnect the vehicle's battery within 15 seconds.



## Replacing the vehicle battery

### Note

Any deviation from the instructions given in this section may lead to temporary deactivation or disturbance of the stop-start system.

When the vehicle battery is being replaced, please ensure that there are no open ventilation holes in the vicinity of the positive terminal. If a ventilation hole is open in this area, it must be closed off with a dummy cap, and the ventilation in the vicinity of the negative terminal must be opened.

Ensure that the battery is always replaced by the same type of battery.

The vehicle battery has to be replaced by a workshop.

Stop-start system ⇨ 155.

## Charging the vehicle battery

### ⚠ Warning

On vehicles with stop-start system, ensure that the charging potential does not exceed 14.6 V

when using a battery charger. Otherwise the vehicle battery may be damaged.

Jump starting ⇨ 261.

## Discharge protection

### Battery voltage

When the vehicle battery voltage is running low, a warning message will appear in the Driver Information Centre.

When the vehicle is being driven, the load reduction function temporarily deactivates certain functions, e.g. the heated rear window.

The deactivated functions are reactivated automatically as soon as conditions permit.

### Idle boost

If charging of the vehicle battery is required due to battery condition, the power output of the generator must be increased. This will be achieved by an idle boost which may be audible.

A message appears in the Driver Information Centre.

## Power outlet

The power outlets are deactivated in the event of low vehicle battery voltage.

## Warning label



Meaning of symbols:

- No sparks, naked flames or smoking.
- Always shield eyes. Explosive gases can cause blindness or injury.
- Keep the vehicle battery out of reach of children.

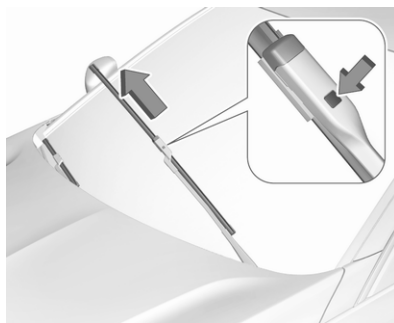
- The vehicle battery contains sulphuric acid which could cause blindness or serious burn injuries.
- See the Owner's Manual for further information.
- Explosive gas may be present in the vicinity of the vehicle battery.

## Diesel fuel system bleeding

If the tank has been run dry, the diesel fuel system must be bled. Switch on the ignition three times for 15 seconds at a time. Then crank the engine for a maximum of 40 seconds. Repeat this process after no less than 5 seconds. If the engine fails to start, seek the assistance of a workshop.

## Wiper blade replacement

### Windscreen

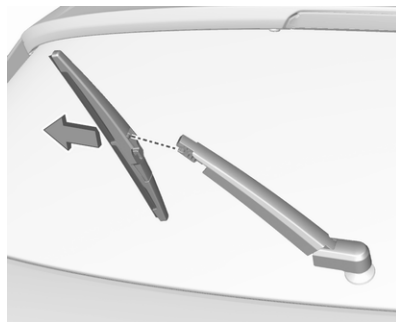


Lift the wiper arm until it stays in the raised position, press button to disengage the wiper blade and remove.

Attach the wiper blade slightly angled to the wiper arm and push until it engages.

Lower wiper arm carefully.

### Rear window



Lift wiper arm. Disengage wiper blade as shown in illustration and remove.

Attach the wiper blade slightly angled to the wiper arm and push until it engages.

Lower wiper arm carefully.

## Bulb replacement

Switch off the ignition and switch off the relevant switch or close the doors. Only hold a new bulb at the base. Do not touch the bulb glass with bare hands.

Use only the same bulb type for replacement.

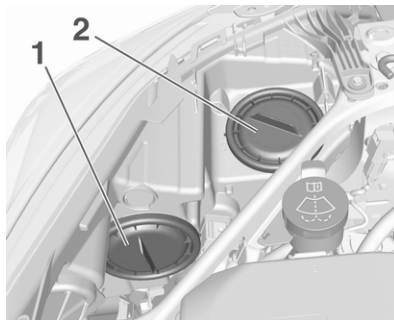
Replace headlight bulbs from within the engine compartment.

### Bulb check

After a bulb replacement switch on the ignition, operate and check the lights.

### Halogen headlights

Halogen headlights with separate bulbs for low beam and high beam.



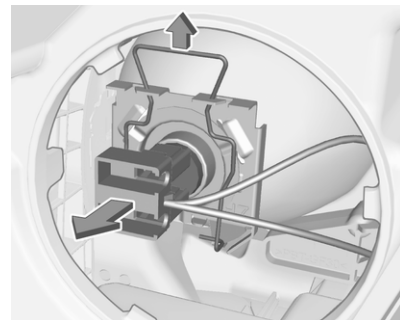
Low beam (1) outer bulb.

High beam (2) inner bulb.

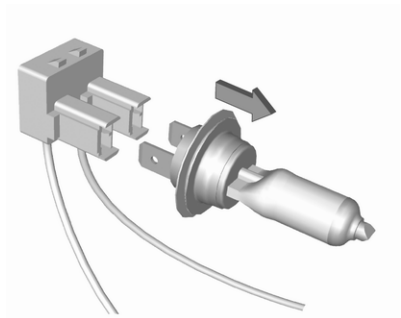
### Low beam (1)



1. Rotate the cap anticlockwise and remove it.

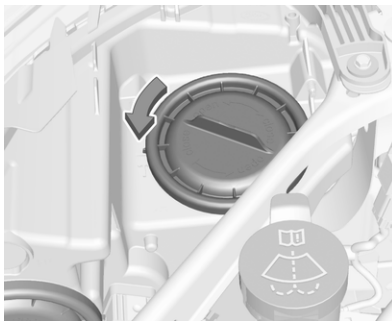


2. Disengage spring clip from retainer by pulling. Withdraw the bulb holder from the reflector housing.

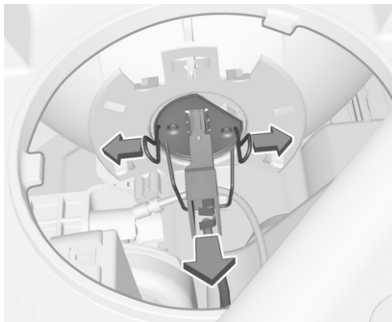


3. Detach the bulb from the bulb holder and replace the bulb.
4. Insert the bulb holder, engaging the two lugs into the reflector housing and rotate clockwise to secure.
5. Push spring clip back in place.
6. Fit the cap and rotate clockwise.

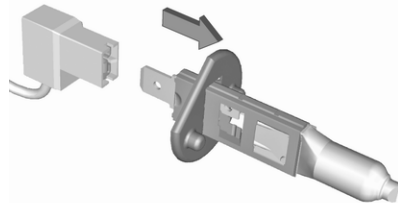
### High beam (2)



1. Rotate the cap anticlockwise and remove it.



2. Disengage spring clip from retainer by moving it forward and to the side. Swivel spring clip downwards.
3. Withdraw the bulb holder from the reflector housing.



4. Detach the bulb from the bulb holder and replace the bulb.
  5. Insert the bulb holder and install spring clip.
- Fit the cap and rotate clockwise.

### Front turn lights

In case of defective LEDs, have them replaced by a workshop.

## Side light

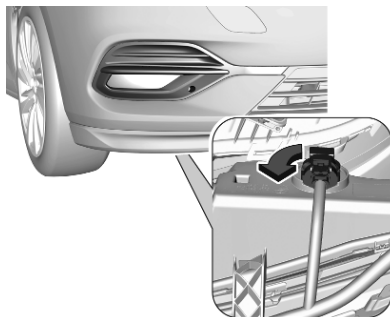
In case of defective LEDs, have them replaced by a workshop.

## Daytime running light

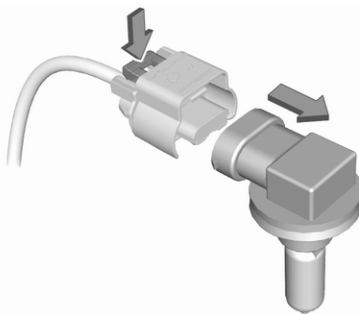
In case of defective LEDs, have them replaced by a workshop.

## Front fog lights

The bulbs are accessible from the underside of the vehicle.



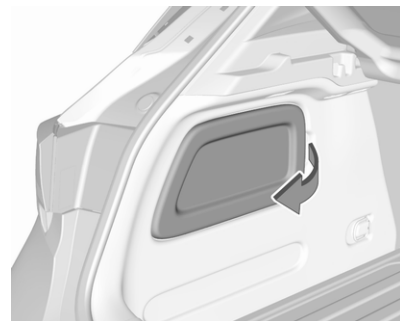
1. Undo screw with a screwdriver and remove the faceplate.



2. Disengage the plug connector by pressing the retaining lug.
3. Remove and replace the bulb unit and attach the plug connector. Note that the bulb and the socket are one unit and have to be changed together.
4. Insert the bulb socket into the light assembly by turning clockwise and engage.
5. Mount the light assembly by tightening the screws.
6. Attach the faceplate and tighten the screw.

## Tail lights

### 5-door Hatchback



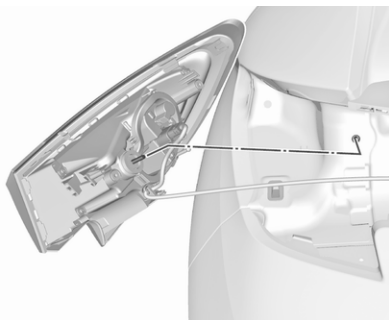
1. Release the cover on the respective side and remove it.



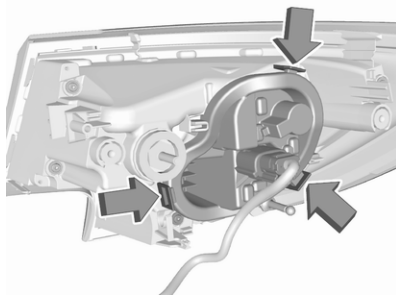
2. Vehicles with tyre repair kit: To replace bulbs on the right side, first unscrew the plastic nut and take out the insert with the sealant bottle.



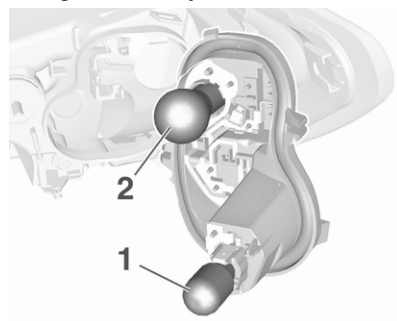
3. Unscrew the plastic securing nut from the inside by hand.



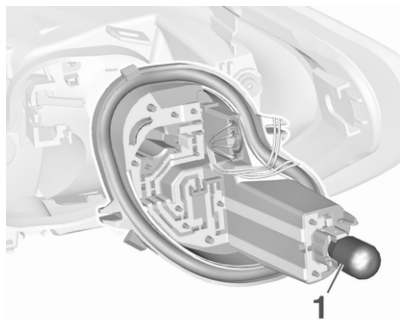
4. Carefully withdraw tail light assembly from recess and remove.
5. Detach the cable from the retainer.



6. Press the three retaining lugs and remove the bulb carrier from the light assembly.



7. Remove and replace the bulbs:  
Turn light (1)  
Tail light/brake light (2)



On version with LED tail lights and LED brake lights, only turn light bulb (1) can be removed and replaced.

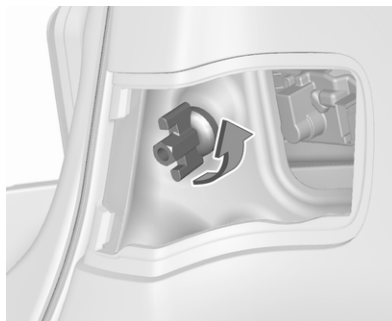
8. Attach the bulb carrier to the light assembly.
9. Attach the cable to the retainer.
10. Attach the light assembly to the vehicle body and tighten the securing nut from the inside of the load compartment. Attach cover.

Depending on the version, tail lights and brake lights are designed as LEDs. In case of failure, have LEDs replaced by a workshop.

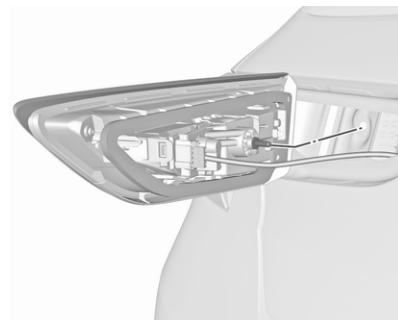
### Light assembly in the tailgate



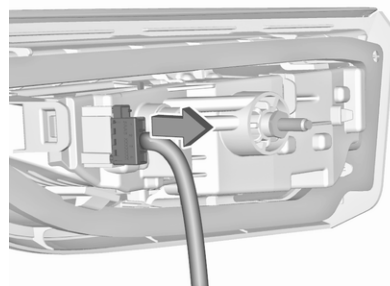
1. Release the cover in the tailgate and remove it.



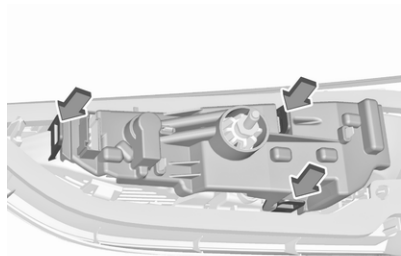
2. Unscrew the plastic securing nut by hand.



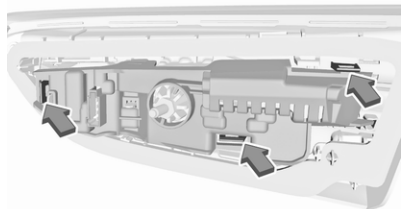
3. Carefully withdraw the light assembly from the recesses and remove.



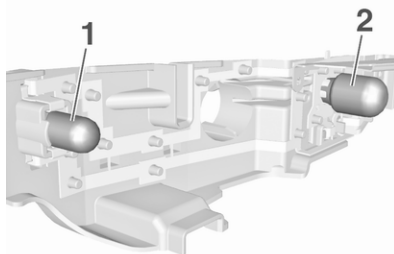
4. Detach the plug from the light assembly.



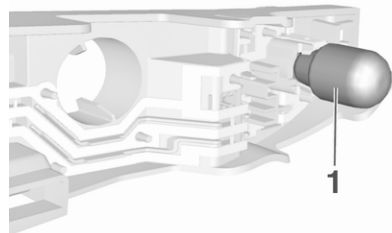
5. Press the three retaining lugs and remove the bulb carrier from the light assembly.



On version with LED tail lights, the position of the retaining lugs is slightly different.



6. Remove and replace the bulb:  
Tail light (1)  
Rear fog light (2) (left side)  
Reverse light (2) (right side)



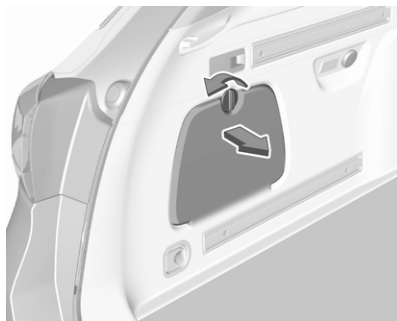
On version with LED tail lights only reverse light bulb (1) can be removed and replaced.

7. Insert the bulb carrier into the tail light assembly. Attach plug to the light assembly. Fit light assembly on the tailgate and tighten the screw from the inside. Attach cover.

Depending on the version, tail lights are designed as LEDs. In case of failure, have LEDs replaced by a workshop.



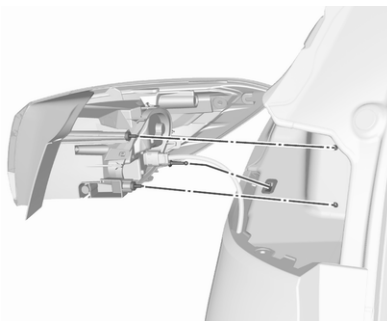
## Sports Tourer



1. Release and open the cover on the respective side.



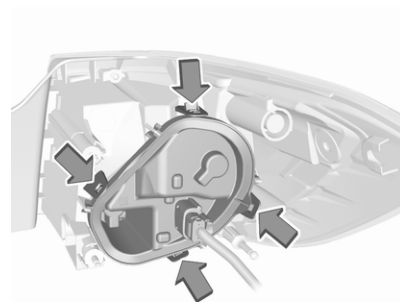
2. Unscrew both plastic securing nuts from the inside by hand.



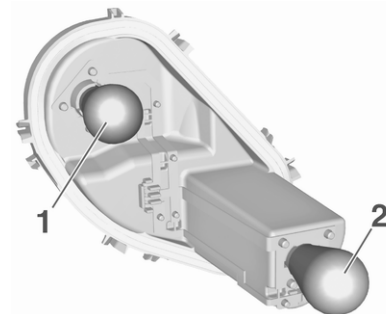
3. Carefully withdraw tail light assembly from recess and remove.

4. Detach the cable from the retainer.

5. Standard tail lights:



Release the retaining lugs and remove the bulb carrier from the light assembly.

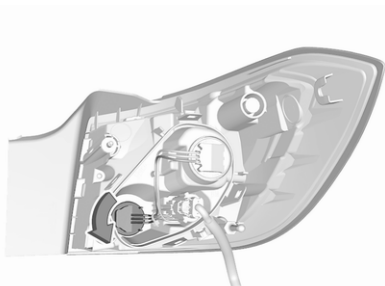


6. Remove and replace the bulbs:

Tail light / brake light (1)

Turn light (2)

7. Insert the bulb carrier into the light assembly.
8. LED tail lights:



On version with LED tail lights and LED brake lights, only the turn light bulb can be replaced: remove bulb holder in the light assembly by turning. Replace bulb in the bulb holder.

9. Attach the cable to the retainer.
10. Attach the light assembly to the vehicle body and tighten the securing nuts from the inside of the load compartment. Attach cover.

Depending on the version, tail lights and brake lights are designed as LEDs. In case of failure, have LEDs replaced by a workshop.

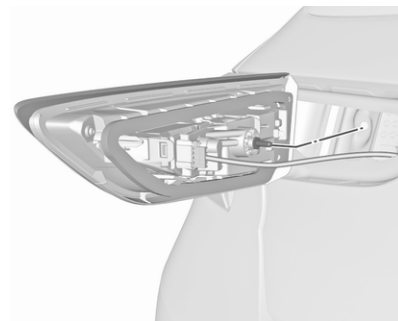
### Light assembly in the tailgate



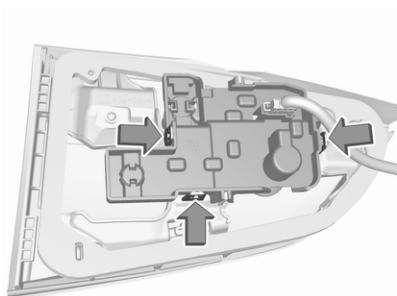
1. Release the cover in the tailgate and remove it.



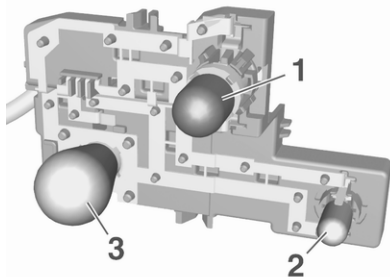
2. Unscrew the plastic securing nut by hand.



3. Carefully withdraw the light assembly from the recesses and remove.



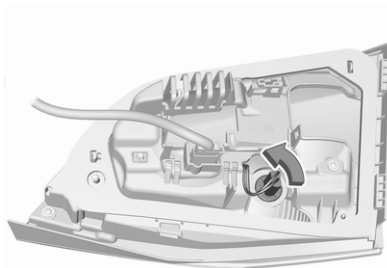
4. Press the three retaining lugs and remove the bulb carrier from the light assembly.



5. Remove and replace the bulb:

- Reverse light (1)  
Tail light (2)  
Rear fog light (3) (left side)

6. Insert the bulb carrier into the tail light assembly.

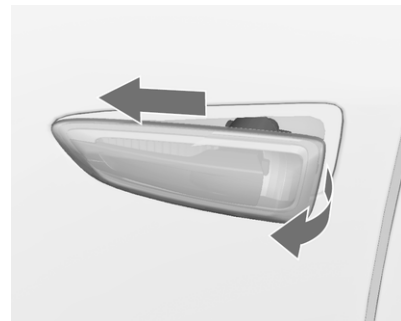


7. On version with LED tail lights only reverse light bulb can be replaced: remove bulb holder in the light assembly by turning. Replace bulb in the bulb holder.  
8. Fit light assembly on the tailgate and tighten the securing nut from the inside. Attach cover.

Depending on the version, tail lights are designed as LEDs. In case of failure, have LEDs replaced by a workshop.

## Side turn lights

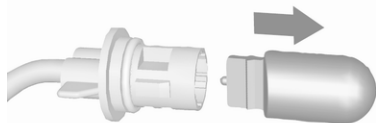
To replace bulb, remove lamp housing:



1. Slide the lamp housing forward and remove it at the back.



2. Turn bulb holder anticlockwise and remove from housing.



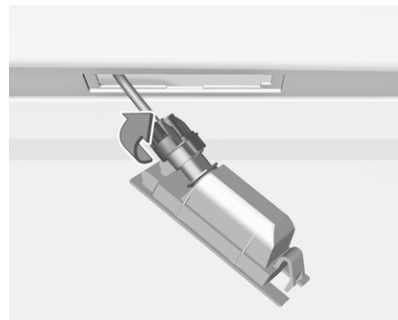
3. Pull bulb from bulb holder and replace it.

4. Insert bulb holder and turn clockwise.  
5. Insert left end of the lamp, slide to the left and insert right end.

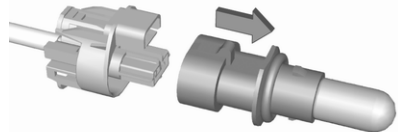
### Number plate light



1. Insert screwdriver in recess of the cover, press to the side and release spring.



2. Remove lamp downwards, taking care not to pull on the cable.  
3. Remove bulb holder from lamp housing by turning anticlockwise.



4. Pull bulb from bulb holder and replace it.
5. Insert bulb holder into lamp housing and turn clockwise.
6. Insert lamp into bumper and let engage.

Some versions have LED number plate lights. In case of defective LEDs, have them replaced by a workshop.

## Interior lights

Have the following bulbs replaced by a workshop:

- courtesy light, reading lights
- load compartment light
- instrument panel illumination

## Electrical system

### Fuses

Data on the replacement fuse must match the data on the defective fuse.

There are three fuse boxes in the vehicle:

- engine compartment
- instrument panel
- load compartment

Before replacing a fuse, turn off the respective switch and the ignition.

A blown fuse can be recognized by its melted wire.

### Caution

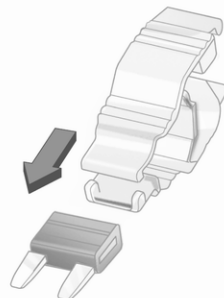
Do not replace the fuse until the cause of the fault has been remedied.

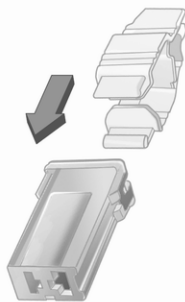
Some functions are protected by several fuses.

Fuses may also be inserted without existence of a function.

### Fuse extractor

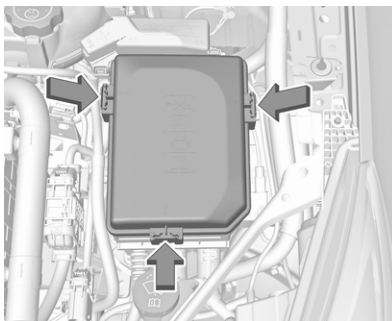
A fuse extractor may be located in the fuse box in the engine compartment. The extractor has two sides, each side is designed for a different type of fuses.



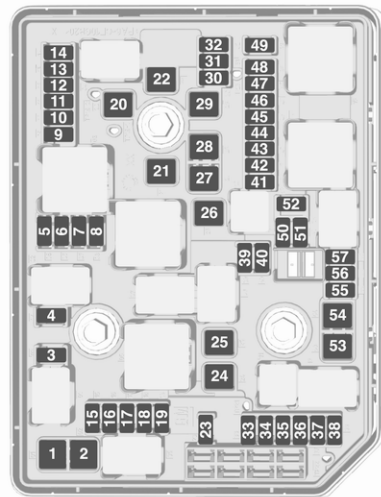


Grab the fuse with the fuse extractor and withdraw the fuse.

## Engine compartment fuse box



The fuse box is in the front left of the engine compartment.  
Disengage the cover and remove it.



**No. Circuit**

- 1 Starter
- 2 Starter
- 3 Exhaust sensor
- 4 Engine control module
- 5 Engine functions / Aeroshutter
- 6 Transmission control module
- 7 Forward collision alert / Adaptive Cruise Control
- 8 Engine control module
- 9 Climate control system
- 10 Diesel exhaust system
- 11 Tailgate locking system / Transmission
- 12 Seat lumbar massage
- 13 After boil pump / Diesel Exhaust system
- 14 Diesel exhaust system
- 15 Exhaust sensor

**No. Circuit**

- 16 Fuel injection
- 17 Fuel injection
- 18 Diesel exhaust system
- 19 –
- 20 –
- 21 –
- 22 ABS
- 23 Washer system for windscreen and rear window
- 24 –
- 25 Diesel fuel heating
- 26 Transmission control module
- 27 Power tailgate module
- 28 –
- 29 Heated rear window
- 30 Mirror defrost
- 31 –

**No. Circuit**

- 32 DC transformer / LED display / Electrical heater / Climate control / Glow plug controller
- 33 –
- 34 Horn
- 35 Engine control module
- 36 Right high beam (Halogen, Eco LED) / Right low beam (LED)
- 37 Left high beam (Halogen, Eco LED)
- 38 LED headlight / Automatic headlight range adjustment
- 39 Front fog light
- 40 Central Gateway Module
- 41 –
- 42 Manual headlight range adjustment
- 43 Fuel pump
- 44 Rear view camera / Inside rear view mirror / Trailer module

**No. Circuit**

- 45 LED headlight left / Automatic headlight range adjustment left
- 46 Instrument cluster
- 47 Steering column lock
- 48 Rear wiper
- 49 Outside rearview mirror
- 50 LED headlight right / Automatic headlight range adjustment right
- 51 Left low beam (LED)
- 52 Engine control module / Transmission control module
- 53 Windscreen wiper
- 54 Windscreen wiper
- 55 Diesel Exhaust system
- 56 –
- 57 –

After having changed defective fuses, close the fuse box cover and press until it engages.

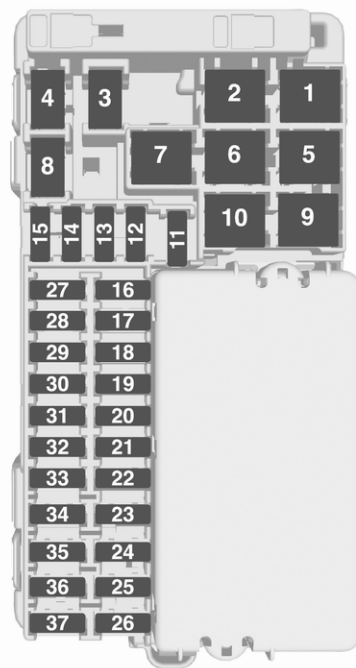
If the fuse box cover is not closed correctly, malfunction may occur.

**Instrument panel fuse box**

The fuse box is located behind a cover.



Pull the cover on the left side to remove.





**No. Circuit**

- 1 Rear seat heating (only for vehicles without alarm horn)
- 2 Climate control system / fan
- 3 Power seat driver side
- 4 Power seat passenger side
- 5 ABS
- 6 Power window front
- 7 –
- 8 Heated steering wheel
- 9 Body control module 8
- 10 Power window rear
- 11 Sunroof
- 12 Body control module 6
- 13 Seat heating (only on vehicles without alarm horn)
- 14 Exterior mirror
- 15 Body control module 1
- 16 Body control module 7

**No. Circuit**

- 17 Body control module 4
- 18 Body control module 3
- 19 Data link connector
- 20 Airbag system
- 21 Climate control system
- 22 Central locking system / tailgate
- 23 Electronic key system
- 24 Power seat memory function
- 25 Airbag system steering wheel
- 26 Ignition switch / Steering column lock
- 27 Body control module 2
- 28 USB socket
- 29 Cigarette lighter / Power outlet front
- 30 Selector lever
- 31 Rear window wiper
- 32 Transmission control module

**No. Circuit**

- 33 Anti-theft alarm system / Power sounder
- 34 Parking assist / Side blind spot alert / Infotainment system / USB socket
- 35 SOS
- 36 Info Display / Instrument cluster
- 37 Infotainment system / radio

After having changed defective fuses, close the fuse box cover:

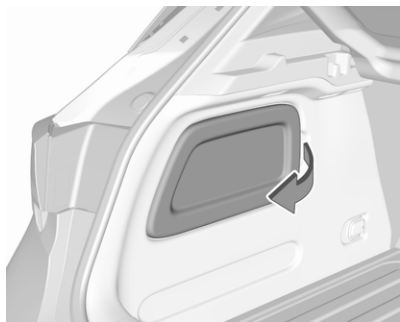
1. Apply the cover on the right side.



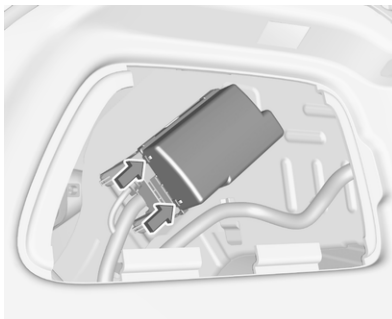
2. Fold the left side of the cover forwards. Take care that the securing clamp is guided as shown in the illustration.

## Load compartment fuse box

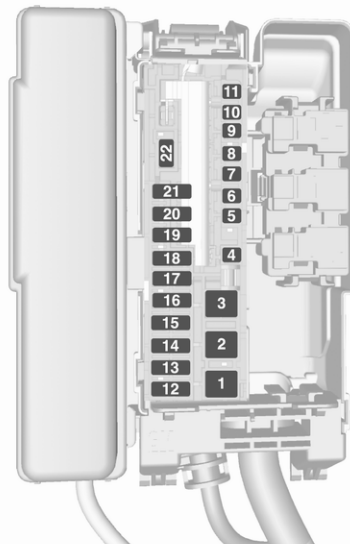
The fuse box is located on the left side of the load compartment behind a cover.



Remove the cover.



Disengage the fuse box cover and remove it.



**No. Circuit**

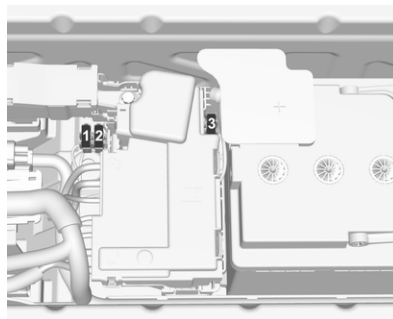
- 1 –
- 2 –
- 3 Trailer module
- 4 –
- 5 –
- 6 –
- 7 –
- 8 –
- 9 –
- 10 –
- 11 Amplifier
- 12 Front seat heating (on vehicles with alarm horn)
- 13 Rear seat heating (on vehicles with alarm horn)
- 14 Ignition
- 15 Seat ventilation
- 16 Trailer outlet

**No. Circuit**

- 17 Trailer outlet
- 18 –
- 19 –
- 20 –
- 21 Electrical rear seat folding
- 22 –

After having changed defective fuses, close the fuse box cover and press until it engages.

Additional fuses are located near the vehicle battery.

**No. Circuit**

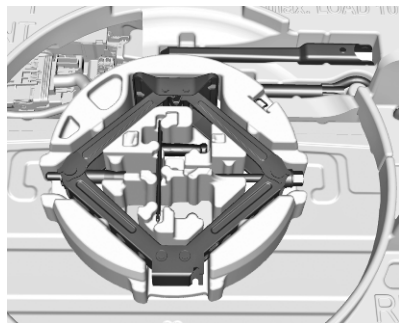
- 1 Engine control module
- 2 Fuel pump
- 3 Power supply

## Vehicle tools

### Tools

#### 5-door hatchback with spare wheel

Open the floor cover of the load compartment ↗ 80.

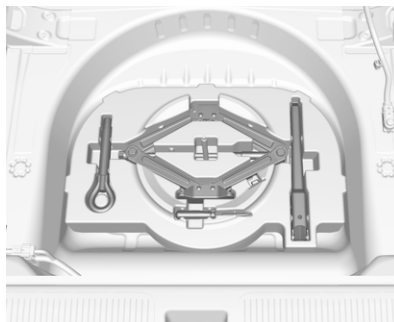


The jack, the towing eye and the tools are located in the tool box below the spare wheel.

Spare wheel ↗ 257.

#### Sports Tourer with spare wheel

Open the floor cover of the load compartment ↗ 80.



The jack, the towing eye and the tools are located in the tool box below the spare wheel.

Spare wheel ↗ 257.

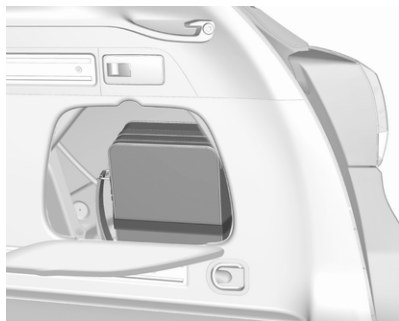
#### 5-door hatchback without spare wheel



Open the cover in the right side wall of the load compartment.

Some tools and the towing eye are located together with the tyre repair kit in a tool box.

## Sports Tourer without spare wheel



Open the cover on the right side of the load compartment.

The tools and the towing eye are located together with the tyre repair kit in a suitcase.

## Wheels and tyres

### Tyre condition, wheel condition

Drive over edges slowly and at right angles if possible. Driving over sharp edges can cause tyre and wheel damage. Do not trap tyres on the kerb when parking.

Regularly check the wheels for damage. Seek the assistance of a workshop in the event of damage or unusual wear.

### Winter tyres

Winter tyres improve driving safety at temperatures below 7 °C and should therefore be fitted on all wheels.

In accordance with country-specific regulations, affix the speed sticker in the driver's field of view.

All tyre sizes are permitted as winter tyres ⇨ 282.

## Tyre designations

E.g. 215/50 R 16 95 H

- 215** : Tyre width, mm
- 50** : Cross-section ratio (tyre height to tyre width), %
- R** : Belt type: Radial
- RF** : Type: RunFlat
- 16** : Wheel diameter, inches
- 95** : Load index e.g. 95 is equivalent to 690 kg
- H** : Speed code letter

Speed code letter:

- Q** : up to 160 km/h
- S** : up to 180 km/h
- T** : up to 190 km/h
- H** : up to 210 km/h
- V** : up to 240 km/h
- W** : up to 270 km/h

Choose a tyre appropriate for the maximum speed of this vehicle. Refer to the EEC Certificate of Conformity provided with the vehicle or other national registration documents. Optional equipment could reduce the maximum speed of the vehicle.

## Directional tyres

Directional tyres should be mounted so that they rotate in the correct direction. The proper rotation direction is indicated by a symbol (e.g. an arrow) on the sidewall.

## Tyre pressure

Check the pressure of cold tyres at least every 14 days and before any long journey. Do not forget the spare wheel.

This also applies to vehicles with tyre pressure monitoring system.



Tyre pressure ⇨ 282.

The tyre pressure information label on the left door frame indicates the original equipment tyres and the correspondent tyre pressures.

The tyre pressure data refers to cold tyres. It applies to summer and winter tyres.

Always inflate the spare tyre to the pressure specified for full load.

The ECO tyre pressure serves to achieve the smallest amount of fuel consumption possible.

Make sure tyre loading setting matches the current tyre pressure.

Tyre loading ⇨ 249.

Incorrect tyre pressures will impair safety, vehicle handling, comfort and fuel economy and will increase tyre wear.

Tyre pressures differ depending on various options.

For the correct tyre pressure value, follow the procedure below:

- Identify the engine identifier code.

Engine data ⇨ 277.

- Identify the respective tyre.
- The tyre pressure tables show all possible tyre combinations ⇨ 282.

For the tyres approved for your vehicle, refer to the EEC Certificate of Conformity provided with your vehicle or other national registration documents.

The driver is responsible for correct adjustment of tyre pressure.

### Warning

If the pressure is too low, this can result in considerable tyre warm-up and internal damage, leading to tread separation and even to tyre blow-out at high speeds.

### Warning

For specific tyres the recommended tyre pressure as shown in the tyre pressure table may exceed the maximum tyre

pressure as indicated on the tyre.  
Never exceed the maximum tyre  
pressure as indicated on the tyre.

If the tyre pressure must be reduced or increased on a vehicle with tyre pressure monitoring system, switch off ignition.

### Temperature dependency

The tyre pressure depends on the temperature of the tyre. During driving, tyre temperature and pressure increase. Tyre pressure values provided on the tyre information label and tyre pressure chart are valid for cold tyres, which means at 20 °C.

The pressure increases by nearly 10 kPa for a 10 °C temperature increase. This must be considered when warm tyres are checked.

The tyre pressure value displayed in the Driver Information Centre shows the real tyre pressure. A cooled down tyre will show a decreased value, which does not indicate an air leak.

## Tyre pressure monitoring system

The tyre pressure monitoring system checks the pressure of all four tyres once a minute when vehicle speed exceeds a certain limit.

### Caution

Tyre pressure monitoring system warns only about low tyre pressure condition and does not replace regular tyre maintenance by the driver.

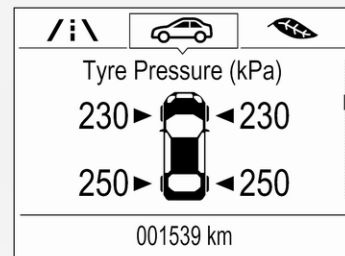
All wheels must be equipped with pressure sensors and the tyres must have the prescribed pressure.

### Note

In countries where the tyre pressure monitoring system is legally required, the use of wheels without pressure sensors will invalidate the vehicle operating permit.

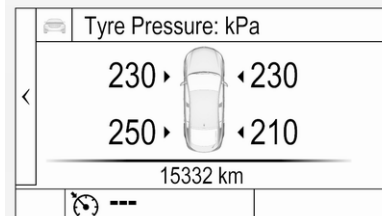
The current tyre pressures can be shown in the Driver Information Centre.

Midlevel display:



Select the **Tyre pressure** page under the **Vehicle Information Menu** in the Driver Information Centre 113.

Uplevel display:



Select the **Tyre pressure** page under the **Info** Menu in the Driver Information Centre ⇨ 113.

System status and pressure warnings are displayed by a message indicating the corresponding tyre in the Driver Information Centre.

The system considers the tyre temperature for the warnings.

Temperature dependency ⇨ 248.



A detected low tyre pressure condition is indicated by the control indicator (⚠) ⇨ 110.

If (⚠) illuminates, stop as soon as possible and inflate the tyres as recommended ⇨ 282.

If (⚠) flashes for 60-90 seconds then illuminates continuously, there is a fault in the system. Consult a workshop.

After inflating, some driving may be required to update the tyre pressure values in the Driver Information Centre. During this time (⚠) may illuminate.

If (⚠) illuminates at lower temperatures and extinguishes after driving, this could be an indicator for approaching a low tyre pressure condition. Check tyre pressure.

Vehicle messages ⇨ 120.

If the tyre pressure must be reduced or increased, switch off ignition.

Only mount wheels with pressure sensors, otherwise the tyre pressure will not be displayed and (⚠) illuminates continuously.

A spare wheel or temporary spare wheel is not equipped with pressure sensors. The tyre pressure monitoring system is not operational for these tyres. Control indicator (⚠) illuminates. For the further three tyres, the system remains operational.

The use of commercially-available liquid tyre repair kits can impair the function of the system. Factory-approved repair kits can be used.

Operating electronic devices or being close to facilities using similar wave frequencies could disrupt the tyre pressure monitoring system.

Each time the tyres are replaced, tyre pressure monitoring system sensors must be dismantled and serviced.

For the screwed sensor, replace valve core and sealing ring. For the clipped sensor, replace complete valve stem.

Use only original plastic valve caps to protect valve on any damage.

### Caution

Do not use metal valve caps as they lead to valve oxidation and damage.

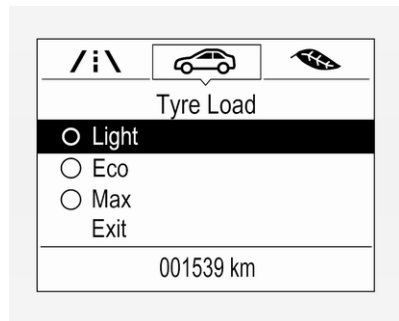


## Vehicle loading status

Adjust tyre pressure to load condition according to the tyre information label or tyre pressure chart ⇨ 282, and select the appropriate setting in **Tyre Load** within the **Vehicle Information Menu** ⇨ 113. This setting determines the reference pressures for the tyre pressure warnings.

The **Tyre Load** menu only appears when the vehicle is at a standstill and the parking brake is applied. On vehicles with automatic transmission the selector lever must be in **P**.

Midlevel display:

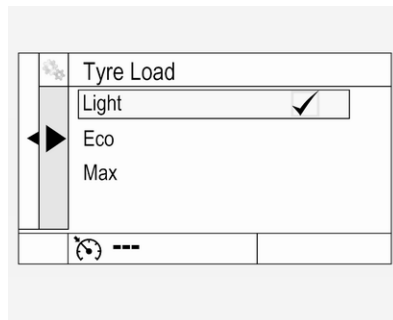


Select the **Tyre load** page under the **Vehicle Information Menu**  in the Driver Information Centre ⇨ 113.

Select

- **Light** for comfort pressure up to three people.
- **Eco** for Eco pressure up to three people.
- **Max** for full loading.

Uplevel display:



Select the **Tyre load** page under the **Options Menu** in the Driver Information Centre ⇨ 113.

Select

- **Light** for comfort pressure up to three people.
- **Eco** for Eco pressure up to three people.
- **Max** for full loading.

## Auto learn function

After changing wheels or wheel positions the vehicle must be stationary for approx. 20 minutes, before the system recalculates. The following relearn process takes up to 10 minutes of driving in a speed range of 40 to 100 km/h. Avoid to drive outside of this range for a longer time. If possible, use a country road or similar which allows continuous driving. During relearn process -- can be displayed or pressure values can swap in the Driver Information Centre.

Ensure the tyre loading status is set according to the selected pressure ⇨ 113.

If problems occur during the relearn process, a failure message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre. (U) will flash for 60 seconds and then illuminate continuously.

If this happens, repeat learning process. Keep your vehicle stationary for approx. 20 minutes and then drive again for 10 minutes as described above.

## Tread depth

Check tread depth at regular intervals.

Tyres should be replaced for safety reasons at a tread depth of 2-3 mm (4 mm for winter tyres).

For safety reasons, it is recommended that the tread depth of the tyres on one axle should not vary by more than 2 mm.



The legally permissible minimum tread depth (1.6 mm) has been reached when the tread has worn down as far as one of the tread wear indicators (TWI). Their position is indicated by markings on the sidewall.

If there is more wear at the front than the rear, swap round front wheels and rear wheels periodically. Ensure that the direction of rotation of the wheels remains the same.

Tyres age, even if they are not used. We recommend tyre replacement every 6 years.

## Changing tyre and wheel size

If tyres of a different size than those fitted at the factory are used, it may be necessary to reprogramme the nominal tyre pressure and make other vehicle modifications.

After converting to a different tyre size, have the label with tyre pressures replaced and the tyre pressure monitoring system reinitialised ⇨ 249.

### Warning

The use of unsuitable tyres or wheels may lead to accidents and will invalidate the vehicle operating permit.

## Wheel covers

Wheel covers and tyres that are factory approved for the respective vehicle and comply with all of the relevant wheel and tyre combination requirements must be used.

If the wheel covers and tyres used are not factory approved, the tyres must not have a rim protection ridge.

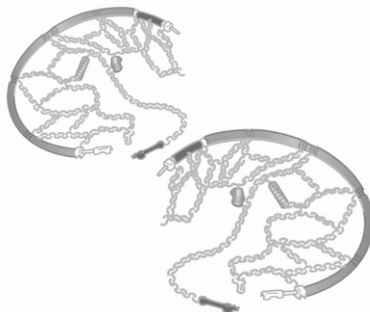
Wheel covers must not impair brake cooling.

### **⚠ Warning**

Use of unsuitable tyres or wheel covers could lead to sudden pressure loss and thereby accidents.

Vehicles with steel wheels: When using locking wheel nuts, do not attach wheel covers.

## **Tyre chains**



Tyre chains are only permitted on the front wheels.

Always use fine mesh chains that add no more than 10 mm to the tyre tread and the inboard sides (including chain lock).

### **⚠ Warning**

Damage may lead to tyre blowout.

Tyre chains are permitted on tyres of size 195/65 R15, 205/55 R16 and 215/55 R16.

## **Temporary spare wheel**

The use of tyre chains is not permitted on the temporary spare wheel.

## **Tyre repair kit**

Minor damage to the tyre tread can be repaired with the tyre repair kit.

Do not remove foreign bodies from the tyres.

Tyre damage exceeding 4 mm or that is at tyre's sidewall cannot be repaired with the tyre repair kit.

### **⚠ Warning**

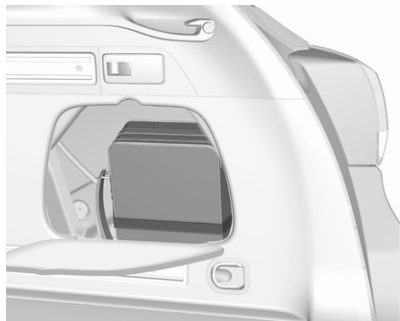
Do not drive faster than 80 km/h.  
Do not use for a lengthy period.  
Steering and handling may be affected.

If vehicle has a flat tyre:

Apply the parking brake and engage first gear, reverse gear or **P**.



On 5-door hatchback the tyre repair kit is on the right side in the load compartment behind a cover.

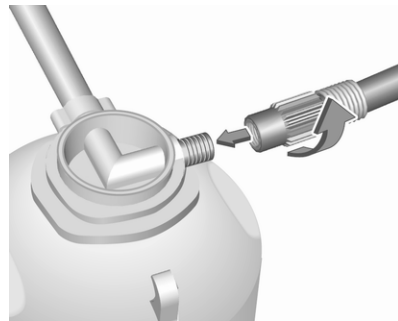


On Sports Tourer the tyre repair kit is in a suitcase on the right side of the load compartment behind a cover. The suitcase is secured with a strap.

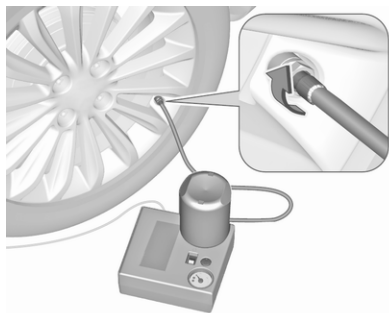
1. Remove the sealant bottle.
2. Insert thumb into the opening and pull out the compressor.



3. Remove the electrical connection cable and air hose from the stowage compartments on the underside of the compressor.

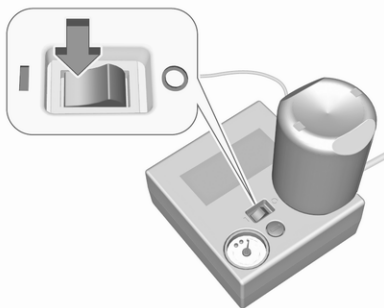


4. Screw the compressor air hose to the connection on the sealant bottle.
  5. Fit the sealant bottle into the retainer on the compressor.
- Set the compressor near the tyre in such a way that the sealant bottle is upright.



6. Unscrew valve cap from defective tyre.
7. Screw the filler hose to the tyre valve.
8. The switch on the compressor must be set to **O**.
9. Connect the compressor plug to the power outlet or cigarette lighter socket.

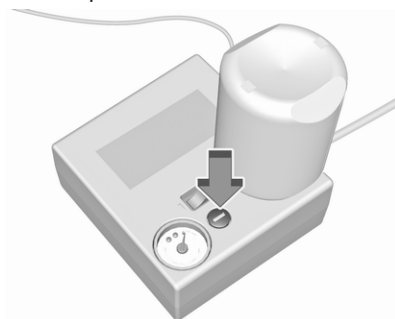
To avoid discharging the battery, we recommend running the engine.



10. Set the rocker switch on the compressor to **I**. The tyre is filled with sealant.
11. The compressor pressure gauge briefly indicates up to 6 bar whilst the sealant bottle is emptying (approx. 30 seconds). Then the pressure starts to drop.
12. All of the sealant is pumped into the tyre. Then the tyre is inflated.
13. The prescribed tyre pressure should be obtained within 10 minutes.

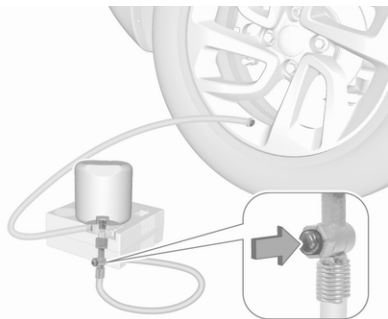
Tyre pressure ⇨ 282.

When the correct pressure is obtained, switch off the compressor.



If the prescribed tyre pressure is not obtained within 10 minutes, remove the tyre repair kit. Move the vehicle one tyre rotation. Reattach the tyre repair kit and continue the filling procedure for 10 minutes. If the prescribed tyre pressure is still not obtained, the tyre is too badly damaged. Seek the assistance of a workshop.

Drain excess tyre pressure with the button over the pressure indicator.

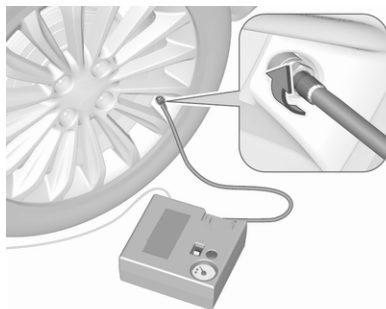


Depending on version the button can be located on the air hose.

Do not run the compressor longer than 10 minutes.

14. Detach the tyre repair kit. Push catch on bracket to remove sealant bottle from bracket. Screw the tyre inflation hose to the free connection of the sealant bottle. This prevents sealant from escaping. Stow tyre repair kit in load compartment.
15. Remove any excess sealant using a cloth.

16. Take the label indicating maximum permitted speed from the sealant bottle and affix in the driver's field of view.
17. Continue driving immediately so that sealant is evenly distributed in the tyre. After driving approx. 10 km (but no more than 10 minutes), stop and check tyre pressure. Screw compressor air hose directly onto tyre valve and compressor when doing this.



If tyre pressure is more than 1.3 bar, set it to the correct value. Repeat the procedure until there is no more loss of pressure.

If the tyre pressure has fallen below 1.3 bar, the vehicle must not be used. Seek the assistance of a workshop.

18. Stow away tyre repair kit in load compartment.

### Note

The driving characteristics of the repaired tyre are severely affected, therefore have this tyre replaced.

If unusual noise is heard or the compressor becomes hot, turn compressor off for at least 30 minutes.

The built-in safety valve opens at a pressure of 7 bar.

Note the expiry date of the kit. After this date its sealing capability is no longer guaranteed. Pay attention to storage information on sealant bottle.

Replace the used sealant bottle. Dispose of the bottle as prescribed by applicable laws.

The compressor and sealant can be used from approx. -30 °C.

The adapters possibly supplied can be used to pump up other items e.g. footballs, air mattresses, inflatable dinghies etc. They can be located on the underside of the compressor. To remove, screw on compressor air hose and withdraw adapter.

## Wheel changing

Make the following preparations and observe the following information:

- Park the vehicle on a level, firm and non-skid surface. The front wheels must be in the straight-ahead position.
- Apply the parking brake and engage first gear, reverse gear or **P**.
- If the ground on which the vehicle is standing is soft, a solid board (max. 1 cm thick) should be placed under the jack.
- Take heavy objects out of the vehicle before jacking up.
- No people or animals may be in the vehicle when it is jacked-up.
- Never crawl under a jacked-up vehicle.

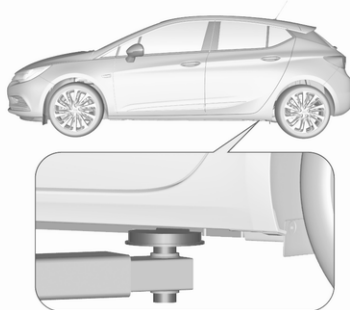
- Do not start the vehicle when it is raised on the jack.
- Clean wheel nuts and thread with a clean cloth before mounting the wheel.

### Warning

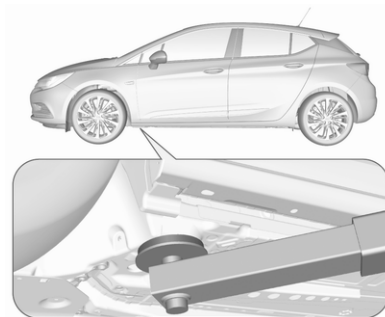
Do not grease wheel bolt, wheel nut and wheel nut cone.

## Jacking positions

The jacking positions shown refer to the use of lifting arms and accessory jacks used for changing winter / summer tyres.



Rear arm position of the lifting platform centrally under the relevant vehicle jacking point.



Front arm position of the lifting platform centrally under the relevant vehicle jacking point.

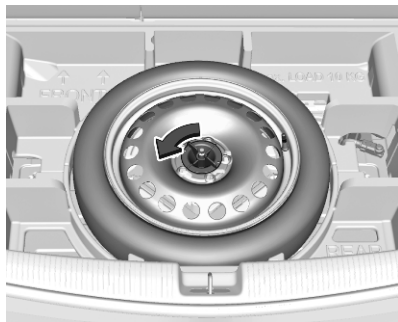
## Spare wheel

The spare wheel can be classified as a temporary spare wheel depending on the size compared to the other mounted wheels and country regulations. In this case a permissible maximum speed applies, even though no label at the spare wheel indicates this.

Only mount one temporary spare wheel. Do not drive faster than 80 km/h. Take curves slowly. Do not use for a long period of time.

### Caution

The use of a spare wheel that is smaller than the other wheels or in combination with winter tyres could affect driveability. Have the defective tyre replaced as soon as possible.



The spare wheel is located in the load compartment beneath the floor covering.

To remove:

1. Open the floor cover ⇨ 80.
2. The spare wheel is secured with a wing nut. Unscrew the wing nut and take out the spare wheel.

Under the spare wheel there is the box with vehicle tools.

3. When, after a wheel change, no wheel is placed in the spare wheel well, secure the tool box by tightening the wing nut as far as it will go and close floor cover.
4. After wheel change back to full size wheel, place the spare wheel outside up in the well and secure with the wing nut.

Only mount one temporary spare wheel. The permissible maximum speed on the label on the temporary spare wheel is only valid for the factory-fitted tyre size.

### Fitting the spare wheel

Make the following preparations and observe the following information:

- Park the vehicle on a level, firm and non-skid surface. The front wheels must be in the straight-ahead position.
- Apply the parking brake and engage first gear, reverse gear or P.
- Remove the spare wheel.
- Never change more than one wheel at once.
- Use the jack only to change wheels in case of puncture, not for seasonal winter or summer tyre change.
- The jack is maintenance-free.
- If the ground on which the vehicle is standing is soft, a solid board (max. 1 cm thick) should be placed under the jack.
- Take heavy objects out of the vehicle before jacking up.
- No people or animals may be in the vehicle when it is jacked-up.



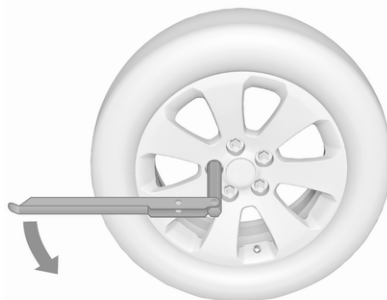
- Never crawl under a jacked-up vehicle.
- Do not start the vehicle when it is raised on the jack.
- Clean wheel nuts and thread with a clean cloth before mounting the wheel.

### **⚠ Warning**

Do not grease wheel bolt, wheel nut and wheel nut cone.

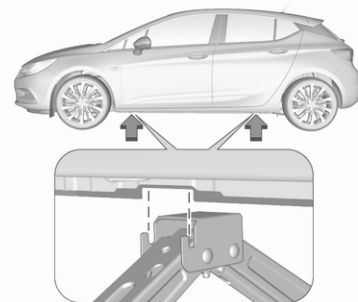
1. Steel wheels with cover: Pull off the wheel cover.

Alloy wheels: Disengage wheel nut caps with a slot screwdriver and remove. To protect the wheel paint and the cap, wrap a cloth around the screwdriver tip ➔ 246.

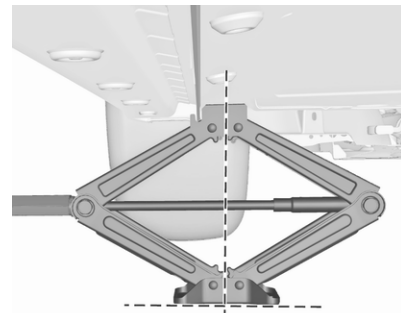


2. Fold out the wheel wrench and install ensuring that it locates securely and loosen each wheel nut by half a turn.

The wheels might be protected by locking wheel nuts. To loosen these specific nuts, first attach the adapter for the locking wheel nuts onto the head of the nut before installing the wheel wrench. The adapter is located in the glovebox.

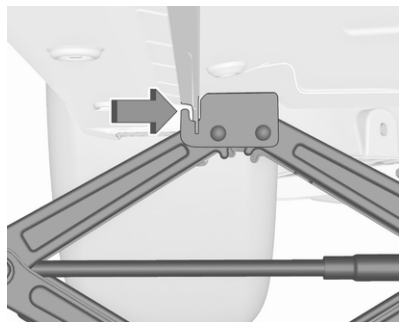


3. Ensure the jack is correctly positioned under the relevant vehicle jacking point.



4. Set the jack to the necessary height. Position it directly below

the jacking point in a manner that prevents it from slipping.



Ensure that the edge of the body fits into the notch of the jack.



Attach wheel wrench and with the jack correctly aligned rotate wheel wrench until wheel is clear of the ground.

5. Unscrew the wheel nuts.
6. Change the wheel.
7. Screw on the wheel nuts.
8. Lower the vehicle and remove jack.
9. Install the wheel wrench ensuring that it is located securely and tighten each nut in a crosswise sequence. Tightening torque is 140 Nm.
10. Align the valve hole in the wheel cover with the tyre valve before installing.  
Install wheel nut caps.
11. Stow and secure the replaced wheel, the vehicle tools ⇨ 246 and the adapter for the locking wheel nuts ⇨ 71.
12. Check the tyre pressure of the installed tyre and the wheel nut torque as soon as possible.

Have the defective tyre renewed or repaired as soon as possible.

### Stowing a damaged full size wheel in the load compartment, 5-door hatchback

The spare wheel well is not designed for other tyre sizes than the spare wheel. A damaged full size wheel must be stowed in the load compartment.

Vehicle tools ⇨ 246.

Make sure to store the wheel securely in the load compartment ⇨ 88.

#### **⚠ Danger**

Always drive with folded up and engaged rear seat backrests when stowing a damaged full size wheel in the load compartment.

#### **⚠ Warning**

Storing a jack, a wheel or other equipment in the load compartment could cause injury if

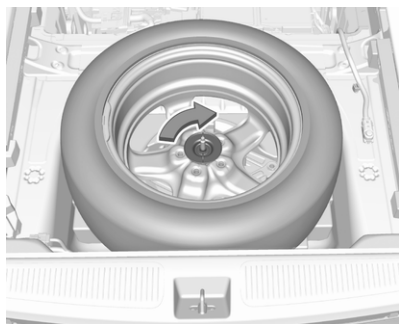
they are not fixed properly. During a sudden stop or a collision, loose equipment could strike someone.

Always store jack and tools in the respective storage compartments and secure them by fixing.

Damaged wheel placed in the load compartment must always be secured with the strap.

### Stowing a damaged full size wheel in the load compartment, Sports Tourer

All permitted wheel sizes can be stowed in the spare wheel well. To secure the wheel:



1. Remove centre cap with the brand emblem by pushing from the inside.
2. Position the wheel outside down in the wheel well.
3. Secure the defective wheel with the wing nut.
4. Depending on the tyre size, the floor cover can be placed on the projecting wheel.

### Spare wheel with directional tyre

The following applies to tyres fitted opposing the rolling direction:

- Driveability may be affected. Have the defective tyre renewed or repaired as soon as possible and fit it instead of the spare wheel.
- Drive particularly carefully on wet and snow-covered road surfaces.

## Jump starting

A vehicle with a discharged vehicle battery can be started using jump leads and the vehicle battery of another vehicle.

Do not start with quick charger.

The vehicle battery is located in the load compartment under a cover.

There are connecting points for jump starting in the engine compartment.

### Warning

Be extremely careful when starting with jump leads. Any deviation from the following instructions can lead to injuries or damage caused by battery explosion or damage to the electrical systems of both vehicles.

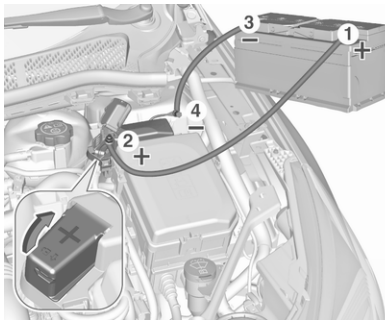
### Warning

Avoid contact of the battery with eyes, skin, fabrics and painted surfaces. The fluid contains

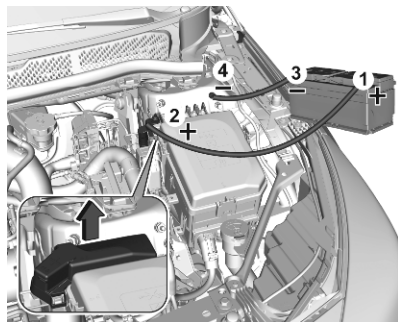
sulphuric acid which can cause injuries and damage in the event of direct contact.

- Never expose the vehicle battery to naked flames or sparks.
- A discharged vehicle battery can already freeze at a temperature of 0 °C. Defrost the frozen vehicle battery before connecting jump leads.
- Wear eye protection and protective clothing when handling a vehicle battery.
- Use a booster vehicle battery with the same voltage (12 V). Its capacity (Ah) must not be much less than that of the discharged vehicle battery.
- Use jump leads with insulated terminals and a cross section of at least 16 mm<sup>2</sup> (25 mm<sup>2</sup> for diesel engines).
- Do not disconnect the discharged vehicle battery from the vehicle.
- Switch off all unnecessary electrical consumers.

- Do not lean over the vehicle battery during jump starting.
- Do not allow the terminals of one lead to touch those of the other lead.
- The vehicles must not come into contact with each other during the jump starting process.
- Apply the parking brake, transmission in neutral, automatic transmission in **P**.
- Open the positive terminal protection caps of both batteries.



Illustrations show different versions.



Lead connection order:

1. Connect the red lead to the positive terminal of the booster vehicle battery.
2. Connect the other end of the red lead to the positive terminal of the discharged vehicle battery.
3. Connect the black lead to the negative terminal of the booster vehicle battery.
4. Connect the other end of the black lead to a vehicle grounding point of your vehicle in the engine compartment.

Route the leads so that they cannot catch on rotating parts in the engine compartment.

To start the engine:

1. Start the engine of the vehicle providing the jump.
2. After 5 minutes, start the other engine. Start attempts should be made for no longer than 15 seconds at an interval of one minute.
3. Allow both engines to idle for approx. 3 minutes with the leads connected.
4. Switch on electrical consumers (e.g. headlights, heated rear window) of the vehicle receiving the jump start.
5. Reverse above sequence exactly when removing leads.

## Towing

### Towing the vehicle



Wrap a cloth around the tip of a flat screwdriver to prevent paint damage. Insert the screwdriver in the slot at the edge of the cap. Release the cap by levering it out carefully.

The towing eye is stowed with the vehicle tools ↪ 246.



Screw in the towing eye as far as it will go until it stops in a horizontal position.

Attach a tow rope – or better still a tow rod – to the towing eye.

The towing eye must only be used for towing and not for recovering the vehicle.

Switch on ignition to release steering wheel lock and to permit operation of brake lights, horn and windscreen wiper.

**Caution**

Deactivate the driver assistance systems like active emergency braking ➔ 188, otherwise the vehicle may automatically brake during towing.

Switch the selector lever to neutral.  
Release the parking brake.

**Caution**

Drive slowly. Do not drive jerkily. Excessive tractive force can damage the vehicle.

When the engine is not running, considerably more force is needed to brake and steer.

To prevent the entry of exhaust gases from the towing vehicle, switch on the air recirculation and close the windows.

Vehicles with automatic transmission: The vehicle must be towed facing forwards, not faster than 80 km/h nor further than 100 km. In all other cases

and when the transmission is defective, the front axle must be raised off the ground.

Seek the assistance of a workshop.

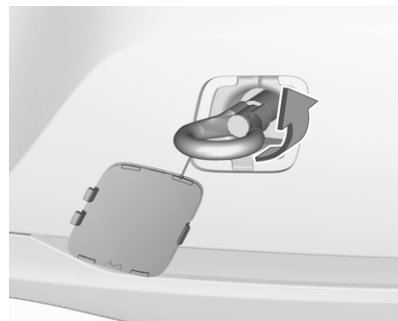
After towing, unscrew the towing eye.

Insert cap at the top and engage downwards.

**Towing another vehicle**

Insert the screwdriver in the slot at the edge of the cap. Release the cap by levering it out carefully.

The towing eye is stowed with the vehicle tools ➔ 246.



Screw in the towing eye as far as it will go until it stops in a horizontal position.

The lashing eye at the rear underneath the vehicle must never be used as a towing eye.

Attach a tow rope – or even better a tow bar – to the towing eye.

The towing eye must only be used for towing and not for recovering a vehicle.

**Caution**

Drive slowly. Do not drive jerkily. Excessive tractive force can damage the vehicle.

After towing, unscrew the towing eye. Insert cap at the top and engage downwards.

## Appearance care

### Exterior care

#### Locks

The locks are lubricated at the factory using a high quality lock cylinder grease. Use de-icing agent only when absolutely necessary, as this has a degreasing effect and impairs lock function. After using a de-icing agent, have the locks regreased by a workshop.

#### Washing

The paintwork of your vehicle is exposed to environmental influences.

Bird droppings, dead insects, resin, pollen and the like should be cleaned off immediately, as they contain aggressive constituents which can cause paint damage.

If using a vehicle wash, comply with the vehicle wash manufacturer's instructions. The windscreen wiper and rear window wiper must be

switched off. Remove antenna and external accessories such as roof racks etc.

If you wash your vehicle by hand, make sure that the insides of the wheel housings are also thoroughly rinsed out.

Clean edges and folds on opened doors and the bonnet as well as the areas they cover.

Clean bright metal mouldings with a cleaning solution approved for aluminium to avoid damages.

**Caution**

Always use a cleaning agent with a pH value of four to nine.

Do not use cleaning agents on hot surfaces.

Do not clean the engine compartment with a steam-jet or high-pressure jet cleaner.

Thoroughly rinse and leather-off the vehicle. Rinse leather frequently. Use separate leathers for painted and glass surfaces: remnants of wax on the windows will impair vision.

Have the door hinges of all doors greased by a workshop.

Do not use hard objects to remove spots of tar. Use tar removal spray on painted surfaces.

### **Exterior lights**

Headlight and other light covers are made of plastic. Do not use any abrasive or caustic agents, do not use an ice scraper, and do not clean them dry.

### **Polishing and waxing**

Polishing is necessary only if the paint has become dull or if solid deposits have become attached to it.

Plastic body parts must not be treated with wax or polishing agents.

### **Windows and windscreen wiper blades**

Switch off wipers before handling in their areas.

Use a soft lint-free cloth or chamois leather together with window cleaner and insect remover.

When cleaning the rear window from inside, always wipe in parallel to the heating element to prevent damage.

For mechanical removal of ice, use a sharp-edged ice scraper. Press the scraper firmly against the glass so that no dirt can get under it and scratch the glass.

Clean smearing wiper blades with a soft cloth and window cleaner.

Remove dirt residues from smearing wiper blades by using a soft cloth and window cleaner. Also make sure to remove any residues such as wax, insect residues and similar from the window.

Ice residues, pollution and continuous wiping on dry windows will damage or even destroy the wiper blades.

### **Sunroof**

Never clean with solvents or abrasive agents, fuels, aggressive media (e.g. paint cleaner, acetone-containing solutions etc.), acidic or highly alkaline media or abrasive pads. Do not apply wax or polishing agents to the sunroof.

### **Wheels and tyres**

Do not use high-pressure jet cleaners.

Clean rims with a pH-neutral wheel cleaner.

Rims are painted and can be treated with the same agents as the body.

### **Paintwork damage**

Rectify minor paintwork damage with a touch-up pen before rust forms. Have more extensive damage or rust areas repaired by a workshop.

### **Underbody**

Some areas of the vehicle underbody have a PVC undercoating while other critical areas have a durable protective wax coating.

After the underbody is washed, check the underbody and have it waxed if necessary.

Bitumen / rubber materials could damage the PVC coating. Have underbody work carried out by a workshop.



Before and after winter, wash the underbody and have the protective wax coating checked.

### Towing equipment

Do not clean the coupling ball bar with a steam-jet or high-pressure jet cleaner.

### Air shutter

Clean the shutter system in the front bumper to maintain correct functionality.

## Interior care

### Interior and upholstery

Only clean the vehicle interior, including the instrument panel fascia and panelling, with a dry cloth or interior cleaner.

Clean the leather upholstery with clear water and a soft cloth. In case of heavy soiling, use leather care.

The instrument cluster and the displays should only be cleaned using a soft damp cloth. If necessary use a weak soap solution.

Clean fabric upholstery with a vacuum cleaner and brush. Remove stains with an upholstery cleaner.

Clothing fabrics may not be colourfast. This could cause visible discolourations, especially on light-coloured upholstery. Removable stains and discolourations should be cleaned as soon as possible.

Clean seat belts with lukewarm water or interior cleaner.

#### Caution

Close Velcro fasteners as open Velcro fasteners on clothing could damage seat upholstery.

The same applies to clothing with sharp-edged objects, like zips or belts or studded jeans.

### Plastic and rubber parts

Plastic and rubber parts can be cleaned with the same cleaner as used to clean the body. Use interior cleaner if necessary. Do not use any other agent. Avoid solvents and petrol in particular. Do not use high-pressure jet cleaners.

### Floor mats

#### Warning

If a floor mat has the wrong size or is not properly installed, it can interfere with the accelerator pedal and/or brake pedal, what can cause unintended acceleration and/or increased stopping distance which can cause a crash and injury.

Use the following guidelines for proper floor mat usage.

- The original equipment floor mats were designed for your vehicle. If the floor mats need replacing, it is recommended that certified

floor mats be purchased. Always check that the floor mats do not interfere with the pedals.

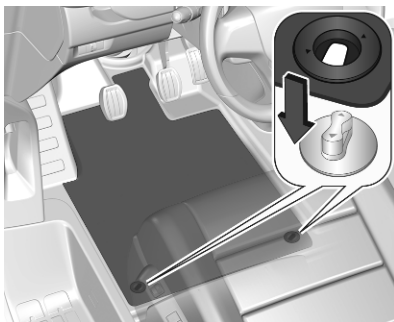
- Use the floor mat with the correct side up. Do not turn it over.
- Do not place anything on top of the driver side floor mat.
- Use only a single floor mat on the driver side.
- Do not place one floor mat on top of another.

### Inserting and removing the floor mats

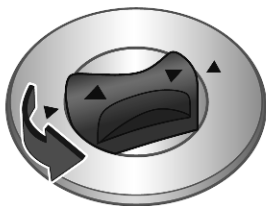
The driver side floor mat is held in place by two retainers.

To install the driver's side floor mat:

1. Move the driver's seat backwards as far as possible.

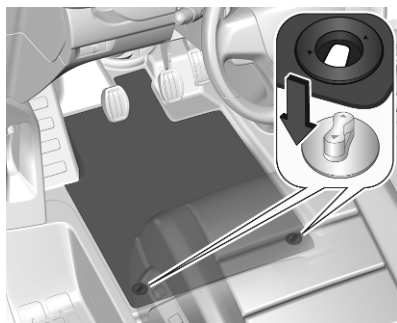


2. Align slots in the mat with the retainers, as shown.

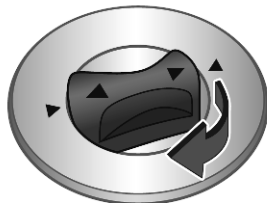


3. Turn retainers anti-clockwise for a quarter turn.

1. Move the driver's seat backwards as far as possible.



2. Align slots in the mat with the retainers, as shown.



3. Turn retainers clockwise for a quarter turn.

**Removing**

1. Move the driver's seat backwards as far as possible.
2. Turn retainers a quarter turn towards the opposite direction than during installation.
3. Remove the mat.

## Service and maintenance

|   |            |
|---|------------|
| <b>General information .....</b>                      | <b>270</b> |
| Service information .....                             | 270        |
| <b>Recommended fluids, lubricants and parts .....</b> | <b>271</b> |
| Recommended fluids and lubricants .....               | 271        |

## General information

### Service information

In order to ensure economical and safe vehicle operation and to maintain the value of your vehicle, it is of vital importance that all maintenance work is carried out at the proper intervals as specified.

The detailed, up-to-date service schedule for your vehicle is available at the workshop.

Service display ⇨ 105.

### European service intervals

Maintenance of your vehicle is required every 30,000 km or after one year, whichever occurs first. Engine oil and filter change is indicated by the engine oil life system, when required earlier than maintenance.

A shorter service interval can be valid for severe driving behaviour, e.g. for taxis and police vehicles.

The European service intervals are valid for the following countries:

Andorra, Austria, Belgium, Bosnia-Herzegovina, Bulgaria, Croatia, Cyprus, Czech Republic, Denmark, Estonia, Finland, France, Germany, Greece, Greenland, Hungary, Iceland, Ireland, Italy, Latvia, Liechtenstein, Lithuania, Luxembourg, North Macedonia, Malta, Monaco, Montenegro, Netherlands, Norway, Poland, Portugal, Romania, San Marino, Serbia, Slovakia, Slovenia, Spain, Sweden, Switzerland, United Kingdom.

Service display ⇨ 105.

### International service intervals

Maintenance of your vehicle is required every 15,000 km or after one year, whichever occurs first. Additional engine oil and filter change is indicated by the engine oil life system, when required earlier than maintenance.

Severe operating conditions exist if one or more of the following circumstances occur frequently: Cold starting, stop and go operation, trailer operation, mountain driving, driving

on poor and sandy road surfaces, increased air pollution, presence of airborne sand and high dust content, driving at high altitude and large variations of temperature. Under these severe operating conditions, certain service work may be required more frequently than the regular service interval.

The international service intervals are valid for the countries which are not listed in the European service intervals.

Service display ⇨ 105.

## Confirmations

Confirmation of service is recorded in the Service and warranty booklet. The date and mileage is completed with the stamp and signature of the servicing workshop.

Make sure that the Service and warranty booklet is completed correctly as continuous proof of service is essential if any warranty or goodwill claims are to be met. It is also a benefit when selling the vehicle.

## Recommended fluids, lubricants and parts

### Recommended fluids and lubricants

Only use products that meet the recommended specifications.

#### Warning

Operating materials are hazardous and could be poisonous. Handle with care. Pay attention to information given on the containers.

### Engine oil

Engine oil is identified by its quality and its viscosity. Quality is more important than viscosity when selecting which engine oil to use. The oil quality ensures e.g. engine cleanliness, wear protection and oil aging control, whereas viscosity grade gives information on the oil's thickness over a temperature range.

Select the appropriate engine oil based on its quality and on the minimum ambient temperature ⇨ 275.

### Topping up engine oil

#### Caution

In case of any spilled oil, wipe it up and dispose it properly.

Engine oils of different manufacturers and brands can be mixed as long as they comply with the required engine oil quality and viscosity.

Use of engine oils for all petrol engines with only ACEA quality is prohibited, since it can cause engine damage under certain operating conditions.

Select the appropriate engine oil based on its quality and on the minimum ambient temperature ⇨ 275.

### Additional engine oil additives

The use of additional engine oil additives could cause damage and invalidate the warranty.

**Engine oil viscosity grades**

The SAE viscosity grade gives information of the thickness of the oil.

Multigrade oil is indicated by two figures, e.g. SAE 5W-30. The first figure, followed by a W, indicates the low temperature viscosity and the second figure the high temperature viscosity.

Select the appropriate viscosity grade depending on the minimum ambient temperature ⇨ 275.

All of the recommended viscosity grades are suitable for high ambient temperatures.

**Coolant and antifreeze**

Use only organic acid type-long life coolant (LLC) antifreeze approved for the vehicle. Consult a workshop.

The system is factory filled with coolant designed for excellent corrosion protection and frost protection down to approx. -28 °C. In cold regions with very low temperatures the factory filled coolant provides frost protection down to approx. -37 °C. This concentration

should be maintained all year round. The use of additional coolant additives that intend to give additional corrosion protection or seal against minor leaks can cause function problems. Liability for consequences resulting from the use of additional coolant additives will be rejected.

**Washer fluid**

Use only washer fluid approved for the vehicle to prevent damage of wiper blades, paintwork, plastic and rubber parts. Consult a workshop.

**Brake and clutch fluid**

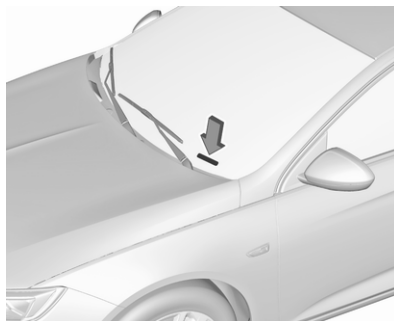
Over time, brake fluid absorbs moisture which will reduce braking effectiveness. The brake fluid should therefore be replaced at the specified interval.

# Technical data

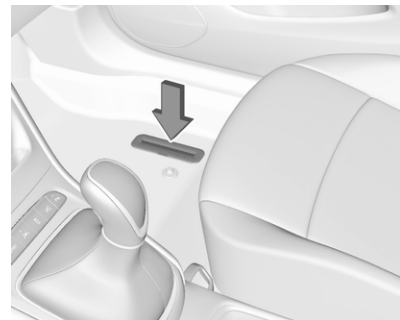
|  |            |
|--|------------|
| <b>Vehicle identification</b> .....        | <b>273</b> |
| Vehicle identification number ..           | 273        |
| Identification plate .....                 | 274        |
| Engine identification .....                | 274        |
| <b>Vehicle data</b> .....                  | <b>275</b> |
| Recommended fluids and<br>lubricants ..... | 275        |
| Engine data .....                          | 277        |
| Performance .....                          | 278        |
| Vehicle dimensions .....                   | 280        |
| Capacities .....                           | 281        |
| Tyre pressures .....                       | 282        |

## Vehicle identification

### Vehicle identification number



The illustrations show different versions.



The vehicle identification number may be stamped on the identification plate and on the floor pan, under the floor covering, visible under a cover.

The vehicle identification number may be embossed on the instrument panel, visible through the windscreen, or in the engine compartment on the right body panel.

Diagram of a black metal plate with identification numbers and weights:

- 1: Points to the top edge of the plate.
- 2: Points to the text "OPEL".
- 3: Points to the text "E1-20314121-001".
- 4: Points to the text "WOLFPCE16AG200710".
- 5: Points to the text "2145 kg".
- 6: Points to the text "2505 kg".
- 7: Points to the text "1.1153 kg".
- 8: Points to the text "2-3420 kg".

- 1 : manufacturer
- 2 : type approval number
- 3 : vehicle identification number
- 4 : permissible gross vehicle weight rating in kg
- 5 : permissible gross train weight in kg
- 6 : maximum permissible front axle load in kg
- 7 : maximum permissible rear axle load in kg
- 8 : vehicle-specific or country-specific data

Vehicle's kerb weight depends on the specification of the vehicle, e.g. optional equipment and accessories. Refer to the EEC Certificate of Conformity provided with your vehicle or other national registration documents.

The technical data is determined in accordance with European Community standards. We reserve the right to make modifications.

## Engine identification

The technical data tables use the engine identifier code. The engine data table additionally shows the engineering code.

Engine data ➞ 277.

To identify the respective engine, refer to the EEC Certificate of Conformity provided with your vehicle or other national registration documents.

The Certificate of Conformity shows the engine identifier code, other national publications may show the engineering code. Check piston displacement and engine power to identify the respective engine.



## Vehicle data

### Recommended fluids and lubricants

#### European service schedule

#### Required engine oil quality

All European countries with European service interval ⇨ 270

| Engine oil quality | Petrol engines<br>F12SHL, F12SHR, F12SHT | Petrol engine<br>F14SHT | Petrol engine<br>B14XFT | Diesel engine<br>F15DVH |
|--------------------|--|-------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| <b>dexos1 Gen2</b> | ✓  | –                       | ✓                       | –                       |
| <b>dexos2</b>      | –  | –                       | –                       | –                       |
| <b>OV0401547</b>   | –  | ✓                       | ✓                       | ✓                       |

In case of dexos or OV0401547 quality is unavailable you may use max. 1l engine oil ACEA A3/B3 or C3 for petrol engines and ACEA C5 for diesel engines.

#### Engine oil viscosity grades

All countries with European service interval ⇨ 270

|                  | Petrol engines<br>F12SHL, F12SHR, F12SHT | Petrol engine<br>F14SHT | Petrol engine<br>B14XFT | Diesel engine<br>F15DVH |
|------------------|--|-------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| <b>Viscosity</b> | SAE 0W-30<br>SAE 5W-30                   | SAE 0W-20               | SAE 0W-20<br>SAE 5W-30  | SAE 0W-20               |

## International service schedule

## Required engine oil quality

All European countries with European service interval ⇨ 270

| Engine oil quality | Petrol engines<br>F12SHL, F12SHR, F12SHT | Petrol engine<br>F14SHT | Petrol engine<br>B14XFT | Diesel engine<br>F15DVH |
|--------------------|--|-------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| <b>dexos1 Gen2</b> | ✓  | –                       | ✓                       | –                       |
| <b>dexos2</b>      | –  | –                       | –                       | –                       |
| <b>OV0401547</b>   | –  | ✓                       | ✓                       | ✓                       |

In case of dexos or OV0401547 quality is unavailable you may use max. 1l engine oil ACEA A3/B3 or C3 for petrol engines and ACEA C5 for diesel engines.

## Engine oil viscosity grades

All countries with European service interval ⇨ 270

|                  | Petrol engines<br>F12SHL, F12SHR, F12SHT | Petrol engine<br>F14SHT | Petrol engine<br>B14XFT | Diesel engine<br>F15DVH |
|------------------|--|-------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| <b>Viscosity</b> | SAE 0W-30<br>SAE 5W-30                   | SAE 0W-20               | SAE 0W-20<br>SAE 5W-30  | SAE 0W-20               |

## Engine data

| Engine identifier code                 | F12SHL    | F12SHR    | F12SHT    | F14SHT     | B16SHT    | B14XFT    |
|--|-----------|-----------|-----------|------------|-----------|-----------|
| Sales designation                      | 1.2       | 1.2       | 1.2       | 1.35       | 1.6       | 1.4       |
| Piston displacement [cm <sup>3</sup> ] | 1199      | 1199      | 1199      | 1342       | 1598      | 1399      |
| Engine power [kW]                      | 81        | 107       | 96        | 107        | 147       | 110       |
| at rpm                                 | 4500      | 5500      | 5500      | 5000 -6000 | 5500      | 5000-5600 |
| Torque [Nm]                            | 195       | 225       | 225       | 236        | 280       | 230       |
| at rpm                                 | 2000-3500 | 2000-3500 | 2000-3500 | 1500-3500  | 1650-4500 | 2000-4000 |
| Fuel type                              | Petrol    | Petrol    | Petrol    | Petrol     | Petrol    | Petrol    |
| Octane rating RON <sup>1)</sup>        |           |           |           |            |           |           |
| recommended                            | 95        | 95        | 95        | 95         | 98        | 95        |
| possible                               | 98        | 98        | 98        | 98         | 95        | 98        |
| possible                               | 91        | 91        | 91        | 91         | 91        | 91        |
| Additional fuel type                   | –         | –         | –         | –          | –         | –         |

1) A country-specific label at the fuel filler flap can supersede the engine-specific requirement.

## 278      Technical data

|  |           |  |
|--|-----------|--|
| Engine identifier code                 | F15DVC    | F15DVH   |
| Sales designation                      | 1.5       | 1.5  |
| Piston displacement [cm <sup>3</sup> ] | 1496      | 1496   |
| Engine power [kW]                      | 77        | 90   |
| at rpm                                 | 3250      | 3500   |
| Torque [Nm]                            | 260       | 300 <sup>2)</sup> / 285 <sup>3)</sup>                |
| at rpm                                 | 1500-2500 | 1750-2500 <sup>2)</sup> /<br>1500-2750 <sup>3)</sup> |
| Fuel type                              | Diesel    | Diesel   |

2) Manual transmission

3) Automatic transmission

## Performance

### 5-door Hatchback

|                        |        |        |        |        |        |        |
|------------------------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| Engine                 | F12SHL | F12SHR | F12SHT | F14SHT | B14XFT | B16SHT |
| Maximum speed [km/h]   |        |        |        |        |        |        |
| Manual transmission    | 200    | 215    | 210    | 215    | 210    | 235    |
| Automatic transmission | –      | –      | –      | 210    | –      | –      |

| Engine                 | F15DVC | F15DVH |
|------------------------|--------|--------|
| Maximum speed [km/h]   |        |        |
| Manual transmission    | 200    | 210    |
| Automatic transmission | –      | 205    |

## Sports Tourer

| Engine                 | F12SHL | F12SHR | F12SHT | F14SHT |
|------------------------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| Maximum speed [km/h]   |        |        |        |        |
| Manual transmission    | 200    | 215    | 210    | 215    |
| Automatic transmission | –      | –      | 210    | 210    |

| Engine                 | F15DVC | F15DVH |
|------------------------|--------|--------|
| Maximum speed [km/h]   |        |        |
| Manual transmission    | 200    | 210    |
| Automatic transmission | –      | 205    |

## Vehicle dimensions

|  | 5-door hatchback | Sports Tourer |
|--|------------------|---------------|
| Length min.-max. [mm]                                  | 4370             | 4702          |
| Width with folded exterior mirrors [mm]                | 1809             | 1809          |
| Width with unfolded exterior mirrors [mm]              | 2042             | 2042          |
| Height (without antenna) [mm]                          | 1437-1531        | 1452-1580     |
| Vehicle height - Rear compartment open [mm]            | 2016             | 2060          |
| Length of load compartment floor [mm]                  | 828              | 1065          |
| Length of load compartment with folded rear seats [mm] | 1575             | 1872          |
| Load compartment width [mm]                            | 1001             | 1028          |
| Load compartment height [mm]                           | 600              | 747           |
| Wheelbase [mm]   | 2662             | 2662          |
| Turning circle diameter [m]                            | 11.44            | 11.44         |

## Capacities

### Engine oil

| Engine                  | F12SHL,<br>F12SHR,<br>F12SHT,<br>F14SHT,<br>B14XFT | B16SHT | Diesel engines |
|-------------------------|--|--------|----------------|
| including filter [l]    | 4.0  | 5.5    | 5.0            |
| between MIN and MAX [l] | 1.0  | 1.0    | 1.0            |

### Fuel tank

|                                       |    |
|---------------------------------------|----|
| Petrol/diesel, refilling quantity [l] | 48 |
| Petrol, refilling quantity [l]        | 14 |

### AdBlue tank

|                                | 5-door hatchback | Sports Tourer |
|--------------------------------|------------------|---------------|
| AdBlue, refilling quantity [l] | 12.5             | 13.5          |

## Tyre pressures

| Engine  | Tyres                                    | Comfort with up to<br>3 people |              | ECO with up to 3 people |              | With full load  |                 |
|---|--|--------------------------------|--------------|-------------------------|--------------|-----------------|-----------------|
|   |  | front                          | rear         | front                   | rear         | front           | rear            |
|   |  | [kPa/bar]                      | [kPa/bar]    | [kPa/bar]               | [kPa/bar]    | [kPa/bar]       | [kPa/bar]       |
| F12SHL,<br>F12SHR,<br>F12SHT,<br>F14SHT,<br>F15DVC,<br>F15DVH | 195/65 R15,                              | 230/2.3                        | 210/2.1      | 250/2.5                 | 250/2.5      | 280/2.8         | 290/2.9         |
|   | 205/55 R16                               | 230/2.3                        | 210/2.1      | 250/2.5                 | 230/2.3      | 280/2.8         | 290/2.9         |
|   | 225/45 R17                               |                                |              |                         |              |                 |                 |
|   | 225/40 R18                               |                                |              |                         |              |                 |                 |
| B14XFT  | 195/65 R15,                              | 220/2.2 (32)                   | 220/2.2 (32) | 270/2.7 (39)            | 270/2.7 (39) | 250/2.5<br>(36) | 270/2.7<br>(39) |
|   | 225/45 R17,                              |                                |              |                         |              |                 |                 |
|   | 215/55 R16,<br>215/50 R17,<br>225/40 R18 |                                |              |                         |              |                 |                 |
|   | 205/55 R16                               | 220/2.2 (32)                   | 220/2.2 (32) | 300/3.0 (43)            | 300/3.0 (43) | 250/2.5<br>(36) | 270/2.7<br>(39) |



| Engine | Tyres                               | Comfort with up to 3 people |                   | ECO with up to 3 people |                   | With full load     |                   |
|--------|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------|-------------------|-------------------------|-------------------|--------------------|-------------------|
|        |                                     | front<br>[kPa/bar]          | rear<br>[kPa/bar] | front<br>[kPa/bar]      | rear<br>[kPa/bar] | front<br>[kPa/bar] | rear<br>[kPa/bar] |
| B16SHT | 225/45 R17                          | 240/2.4 (35)                | 220/2.2 (32)      | 270/2.7 (39)            | 270/2.7 (39)      | 250/2.5 (36)       | 270/2.7 (39)      |
|        | 225/40 R18                          | 260/2.6 (38)                | 240/2.4 (35)      | 270/2.7 (39)            | 270/2.7 (39)      | 270/2.7 (39)       | 290/2.9 (42)      |
|        | 205/55 R16                          | 240/2.4 (35)                | 220/2.2 (32)      | 300/3.0 (43)            | 300/3.0 (43)      | 250/2.5 (36)       | 270/2.7 (39)      |
| All    | Temporary spare wheel<br>115/70 R16 | 420/4.2                     | 420/4.2           | –                       | –                 | 420/4.2            | 420/4.2           |

## Customer information

|   |            |
|---|------------|
| <b>Customer information</b> .....               | <b>284</b> |
| Declaration of conformity .....                 | 284        |
| REACH .....                                     | 288        |
| Software update .....                           | 288        |
| Registered trademarks .....                     | 289        |
| <b>Vehicle data recording and privacy</b> ..... | <b>289</b> |
| Event data recorders .....                      | 289        |
| Radio Frequency Identification (RFID) .....     | 292        |

## Customer information

### Declaration of conformity

#### Radio transmission systems

This vehicle has systems that transmit and / or receive radio waves subject to Directive 2014/53/EU. The manufacturers of the systems listed below declare conformity with Directive 2014/53/EU. The full text of the EU declaration of conformity for each system is available at the following internet address: [www.opel.com/conformity](http://www.opel.com/conformity).

Importer is  
Opel / Vauxhall, Bahnhofplatz,  
65423 Ruesselsheim am Main,  
Germany.

#### Antenna

Laird

8100 Industrial Park Drive, Grand  
Blanc, MI, 48439, USA

Operation frequency: N/A

Maximum output: N/A

#### Antenna

Kathrein Automotive North America,  
Inc.

3967 W. Hamlin Rd., Rochester Hills,  
MI 48309, USA

Operation frequency: N/A

Maximum output: N/A

#### Electronic key

Denso Cooperation

Waldeckerstraße 11, 64546  
Mörfelden-Walldorf, Germany

Operation frequency: 433,92 MHz

Maximum output: -5,88 dBm

#### Electronic key module

Denso Cooperation

Waldeckerstraße 11, 64546  
Mörfelden-Walldorf, Germany

Operation frequency: 125 kHz

Maximum output: -0,14 dBm

#### Front radar unit

Continental Automotive GmbH

ADC Automotive Distance Control  
Systems GmbH, Peter-Dornier-  
Straße 10, 88131 Lindau, Germany

Operation frequency: 76-77 GHz  
Maximum output: 30 EIRP dBm

#### **Immobiliser**

Bosch

Robert Bosch GmbH, Robert Bosch  
Platz 1, 70839 Gerlingen, Germany

Operation frequency: 125 kHz

Maximum output:  
5.1 dBμA/m @ 10 m

#### **Infotainment system Multimedia**

LG Electronics

European Shared Service Center  
B.V., Krijgsman 1, 1186 DM  
Amstelveen, The Netherlands

| Operation frequency (MHz) | Maximum output (dBm) |
|---------------------------|----------------------|
|---------------------------|----------------------|

|                 |   |
|-----------------|---|
| 2400.0 - 2483.5 | 8 |
|-----------------|---|

|                 |    |
|-----------------|----|
| 2400.0 - 2483.5 | 16 |
|-----------------|----|

|                 |   |
|-----------------|---|
| 5725.0 - 5875.0 | 9 |
|-----------------|---|

**Infotainment system Multimedia Navi**  
LG

Electronics European Shared Service  
Center B.V., Krijgsman 1, 1186 DM  
Amstelveen, The Netherlands

| Operation frequency (MHz) | Maximum output (dBm) |
|---------------------------|----------------------|
|---------------------------|----------------------|

|                 |   |
|-----------------|---|
| 2402.0 - 2480.0 | 4 |
|-----------------|---|

|                 |    |
|-----------------|----|
| 2400.0 - 2483.5 | 13 |
|-----------------|----|

|                 |    |
|-----------------|----|
| 5725.0 - 5850.0 | 13 |
|-----------------|----|

#### **Infotainment system Multimedia Navi Pro**

Harman International Industries  
Becker-Goering-Str. 16, 76307  
Karlsbad, Germany

| Operation frequency (MHz) | Maximum output (dBm) |
|---------------------------|----------------------|
|---------------------------|----------------------|

|                 |   |
|-----------------|---|
| 2400.0 - 2483.5 | 9 |
|-----------------|---|

|                 |    |
|-----------------|----|
| 2400.0 - 2483.5 | 19 |
|-----------------|----|

|                 |      |
|-----------------|------|
| 5725.0 - 5875.0 | 13.9 |
|-----------------|------|

**Parking heater remote control receiver**  
Webasto Thermo & Comfort SE

Friedrichshafener Straße 9, 82205  
Gilching, Germany

Operation frequency: N/A

Maximum output: N/A

#### **Parking heater remote control transmitter**

Webasto Thermo & Comfort SE

Friedrichshafener Straße 9, 82205  
Gilching, Germany

Operation frequency: 869,0 MHz

Maximum output: 14 dBm

#### **Radio remote control receiver**

Robert Bosch GmbH

Robert Bosch Platz 1, 70839  
Gerlingen, Germany

Operation frequency: 433.92 MHz

Maximum output: N/A

#### **Radio remote control transmitter**

Robert Bosch GmbH

Robert Bosch Platz 1, 70839  
Gerlingen, Germany

Operation frequency: 433.92 MHz

Maximum output: -9 dbm

**Tyre pressure sensors**

Huf Hülsbeck & Fürst GmbH & Co.  
KG

Gewerbestraße 40, 75015 Bretten-  
Gölshausen, Germany

Operation frequency: 433.92 MHz

Maximum output: 83 dBuV/m

Jack



Wir leben Autos.

### Konformitätserklärung

nach EG Richtlinie 2006/42/EG

Hiermit erklären wir, dass das Produkt:

**Produktbezeichnung:** Wagenheber

**Typ/GM-Teilenummern:** 13512620

den Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 2006/42/EG entspricht.

Angewendete technische Normen:

Jacking  
 GMN9737 Standard Equipment Jack - Hardware Tests  
 GM 14337 Vehicle Integrity-Hoisting and Service Station Jacking  
 GMN5127 Standard Equipment Jack and Spare Tire, Vehicle Test  
 GMW15005  
 ISO TS 16949 Qualitätsmanagementsystem

Der Unterzeichner ist Bevollmächtigter für die Zusammenstellung der technischen Unterlagen.

Rüsselsheim, 27. November 2015

André-Alexander Konter  
 Engineering Group Manager Tire and Wheel Systems  
 Adam Opel AG

Adam Opel AG  
 65423 Rüsselsheim  
 T (0 61 437 77 0, F (0 61 437 77 88 00  
 www.opel.de

Vorstand:  
 Jürgen Neumann (Vorsitzender),  
 Michael F. Aljasson, Holger Krammes,  
 Michael Gschellner, Dr. Thomas Seifert,  
 Peter Thom, Susanna Webber, John Wilkens

Aufsichtsrat:  
 Stephan J. Gasky (Vorsitzender)

Sitz der Gesellschaft: Rüsselsheim  
 Hauptgeschäftsbereich  
 Antingstraße 100, 65423 Rüsselsheim  
 Antingstraße 100, 65423 Rüsselsheim  
 Antingstraße 100, 65423 Rüsselsheim

Ein Unternehmen der GM Group

**Translation of the original declaration of conformity**

Declaration of conformity according to EC Directive 2006/42/EC

We declare that the product:

Product designation: Jack

Type/GM part number: 13512620

is in compliance with the provisions of Directive 2006/42/EC.

Applied technical standards:

- GMN9737 : jacking
- GM 14337 : standard equipment jack – hardware tests
- GMN5127 : vehicle integrity – hoisting and service station jacking
- GMW15005 : standard equipment jack and spare tyre, vehicle test
- ISO TS 16949 : quality management systems

The signatory is authorised to compile the technical documentation.

Rüsselsheim, 27th November 2015

signed by

André-Alexander Konter

Engineering Group Manager Tyre and Wheel Systems

Adam Opel AG

D-65423 Rüsselsheim

**CRAN type approval numbers**

List of all Communications Regulatory Authority of Namibia (CRAN) type approval numbers:

TA-2017/3397, TA-2017/3398, TA-2017/3399, TA-2017/3443

**REACH**

Registration, Evaluation, Authorisation and Restriction of Chemicals (REACH) is a European Union regulation adopted to improve the protection of human health and the environment from the risks that can be posed by chemicals. Visit [www.opel.com/reach](http://www.opel.com/reach) for further information and for access to the Article 33 communication.

**Software update**

The Infotainment system can download and install selected software updates over a wireless connection.

**Note**

The availability of these over-the-air vehicle software updates varies by vehicle and country. Find more information on our home page.

**Internet connection**

Downloading over-the-air vehicle software updates requires internet connectivity, which can be accessed

through a password-protected Wi-Fi hotspot, e.g. provided by a mobile phone.

To connect the Infotainment system to a hotspot, refer to the Infotainment Manual.

## Updates

The system will prompt for certain updates to be downloaded and installed. There is also an option to check for updates manually.

Updates can be checked manually via the Info Display. Follow the on-screen prompts in the respective menu.

Info Display ⇨ 119.

### Note

Steps for downloading and installing updates may vary by vehicle.

### Note

During the installation process, the vehicle may not be operational.

## Registered trademarks

### Apple Inc.

Apple CarPlay™ is a trademark of Apple Inc.

App Store® and iTunes Store® are registered trademarks of Apple Inc.

iPhone®, iPod®, iPod touch®, iPod nano®, iPad® and Siri® are registered trademarks of Apple Inc.

### Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

Bluetooth® is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

### DivX, LLC

DivX® and DivX Certified® are registered trademarks of DivX, LLC.

### EnGIS Technologies, Inc.

BringGo® is a registered trademark of EnGIS Technologies, Inc.

### Google Inc.

Android™ and Google Play™ Store are trademarks of Google Inc.

### Stitcher Inc.

Stitcher™ is a trademark of Stitcher, Inc.

### Verband der Automobilindustrie e.V.

AdBlue® is a registered trademark of the VDA.

## Vehicle data recording and privacy

### Event data recorders

Electronic control units are installed in your vehicle. Control units process data which is received by vehicle sensors, for example, or which they generate themselves or exchange amongst themselves. Some control units are necessary for the safe functioning of your vehicle, others assist you while you drive (driver assistance systems), while others provide comfort or infotainment functions.

The following contains general information about data processing in the vehicle. You will find additional information as to which specific data is uploaded, stored and passed on to third parties and for what purpose in your vehicle under the key word Data Protection closely linked to the references for the affected functional characteristics in the relevant owner's manual or in the general terms of sale. These are also available online.

## Operating data in the vehicle

Control units process data for operation of the vehicle.

This data includes, e.g.:

- vehicle status information (e.g. wheel rotation rate, speed, movement delay, lateral acceleration, "seatbelts fastened" display),
- ambient conditions (e.g. temperature, rain sensor, distance sensor).

As a rule such data is transient, not stored for longer than an operational cycle, and only processed on board the vehicle itself. Control units often include data storage (including the vehicle key). This is used to allow information to be documented temporarily or permanently on vehicle condition, component stress, maintenance requirements and technical events and errors.

Depending on the technical equipment level, the data stored is as follows:

- system component operating states (e.g. fill level, tyre pressure, battery status)
- faults and defects in important system components (e.g. lights, brakes)
- system reactions in special driving situations (e.g. triggering of an airbag, actuation of the stability control systems)
- information on events damaging the vehicle
- for electric vehicles the amount of charge in the high-voltage battery, estimated range

In special cases (e.g. if the vehicle has detected a malfunction), it may be necessary to save data that would otherwise just be volatile.

When you use services (e.g. repairs, maintenance), the operating data saved can be read together with the vehicle identification number and used when necessary. Staff working for the service net-work (e.g. garages,

manufacturers) or third parties (e.g. breakdown services) can read the data from the vehicle. The same applies to warranty work and quality assurance measures.

Data is generally read via the OBD (On-Board Diagnostics) port prescribed by law in the vehicle. The operating data which is read out, documents the technical condition of the vehicle or individual components and assists with fault diagnosis, compliance with warranty obligations and quality improvement. This data, in particular information on component stress, technical events, operator errors and other faults, is transmitted to the manufacturer where appropriate, together with the vehicle identification number. The manufacturer is also subject to product liability. The manufacturer potentially also uses operating data from vehicles for product recalls. This data can also be used to check customer warranty and guarantee claims.



Fault memories in the vehicle can be reset by a service company when carrying out servicing or repairs or at your request.

### **Comfort and infotainment functions**

Comfort settings and custom settings can be stored in the vehicle and changed or reset at any time.

Depending on the equipment level in question, these include

- seat and steering wheel position settings
- chassis and air conditioning settings
- custom settings such as interior lighting

You can input your own data in the infotainment functions for your vehicle as part of the selected features.

Depending on the equipment level in question, these include

- multimedia data such as music, videos or photos for playback in an integrated multimedia system
- address book data for use with an integrated hands-free system or an integrated navigation system
- input destinations
- data on the use of online services

This data for comfort and infotainment functions can be stored locally in the vehicle or be kept on a device that you have connected to the vehicle (e.g. a smartphone, USB stick or MP3 player). Data that you have input yourself can be deleted at any time.

This data can only be transmitted out of the vehicle at your request, particularly when using online services in accordance with the settings selected by you.

### **Smartphone integration, e.g. Android Auto or Apple CarPlay**

If your vehicle is equipped accordingly, you can connect your smartphone or another mobile device to the vehicle so that you can control it via the controls integrated in the vehicle. The smartphone image and sound can be output via the multimedia system in this case. At the same time, specific information is transmitted to your smartphone. Depending on the type of integration, this includes data such as position data, day / night mode and other general vehicle information. For more information, please see the operating instructions for the vehicle / infotainment system.

Integration allows selected smartphone apps to be used, such as navigation or music playback. No further integration is possible between smartphone and vehicle, in particular active access to vehicle data. The nature of further data processing is determined by the provider of the app used. Whether you can define settings, and if so

which ones, is dependent on the app in question and your smartphone's operating system.

### **Online services**

If your vehicle has a radio network connection, this allows data to be exchanged between your vehicle and other systems. The radio network connection is made possible by means of a transmitter device in your vehicle or a mobile device provided by you (e.g. a smartphone). Online functions can be used via this radio network connection. These include online services and applications / apps provided to you by the manufacturer or other providers.

### **Proprietary services**

In the case of the manufacturer's online services, the relevant functions are described by the manufacturer in an appropriate location (e.g. Owner's Manual, the manufacturer's website) and the associated data protection information is provided. Personal data may be used to provide online services. Data exchange for this

purpose takes place via a protected connection, e.g. using the manufacturer's IT systems provided for the purpose. Collection, processing and use of personal data for the purposes of preparation of services take place solely on the basis of legal permission, e.g. in the case of a legally prescribed emergency communication system or a contractual agreement, or by virtue of consent.

You can activate or deactivate the services and functions (which are subject to charges to some extent) and, in some cases, the vehicle's entire radio network connection. This does not include statutory functions and services such as an emergency communication system.

### **Third party services**

If you make use of online services from other providers (third parties), these services are subject to the liability and data protection and usage conditions of the provider in question.

The manufacturer frequently has no influence over the content exchanged in this regard.

Therefore, please note the nature, scope and purpose of the collection and use of personal data within the scope of third party services provided by the service provider in question.

## **Radio Frequency Identification (RFID)**

RFID technology is used in some vehicles for functions such as tyre pressure monitoring and immobiliser. It is also used in connection with conveniences such as radio remote controls for door locking / unlocking and starting. RFID technology in Opel vehicles does not use or record personal information or link with any other Opel system containing personal information.



# Index

## A

|   |          |
|---|----------|
| Accessories and vehicle modifications ..... | 220      |
| Active emergency braking.....               | 188      |
| Adaptive cruise control.....                | 112, 177 |
| AdBlue.....                                 | 110, 161 |
| Adjustable air vents .....                  | 147      |
| Airbag and belt tensioners .....            | 107      |
| Airbag deactivation .....                   | 65, 107  |
| Airbag label.....                           | 60       |
| Airbag system .....                         | 60       |
| Air conditioning regular operation .....    | 148      |
| Air conditioning system .....               | 139      |
| Air intake .....                            | 148      |
| Air vents.....                              | 147      |
| Antilock brake system .....                 | 168      |
| Antilock brake system (ABS) .....           | 109      |
| Anti-theft alarm system .....               | 37       |
| Anti-theft locking system .....             | 37       |
| Appearance care.....                        | 265      |
| Armrest.....                                | 55, 57   |
| Armrest storage .....                       | 72       |
| Ashtrays .....                              | 97       |
| Automatic anti-dazzle .....                 | 42       |
| Automatic light control .....               | 129      |
| Automatic locking .....                     | 30       |
| Automatic transmission .....                | 164      |
| Autostop.....                               | 155      |
| Auxiliary heater.....                       | 147      |

## B

|                                    |          |
|------------------------------------|----------|
| Baselevel display.....             | 113      |
| Battery discharge protection ..... | 138      |
| Battery voltage .....              | 121      |
| Belts.....                         | 58       |
| BlueInjection.....                 | 161      |
| Bonnet .....                       | 222      |
| Brake and clutch fluid.....        | 271      |
| Brake and clutch system .....      | 108      |
| Brake assist .....                 | 171      |
| Brake fluid .....                  | 225      |
| Brakes .....                       | 168, 225 |
| Breakdown.....                     | 263      |
| Bulb replacement .....             | 229      |

## C

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| Capacities .....                             | 281 |
| Cargo management system .....                | 82  |
| Catalytic converter .....                    | 161 |
| Central locking system .....                 | 26  |
| Centre console lighting .....                | 137 |
| Changing tyre and wheel size ...             | 252 |
| Charging system .....                        | 108 |
| Child locks .....                            | 31  |
| Child restraint installation locations ..... | 69  |
| Child restraints.....                        | 67  |
| Child restraint systems .....                | 67  |
| Climate control .....                        | 16  |
| Control indicators.....                      | 106 |

|                              |          |
|------------------------------|----------|
| Control of the vehicle ..... | 150      |
| Controls.....                | 91       |
| Convex shape .....           | 40       |
| Coolant and antifreeze.....  | 271      |
| Cruise control .....         | 112, 174 |
| Cupholders .....             | 71       |
| Curtain airbag system .....  | 65       |
| Curve lighting.....          | 132      |

## D

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| Danger, Warnings and Cautions ...                | 4   |
| Daytime running lights .....                     | 132 |
| Declaration of conformity.....                   | 284 |
| DEF.....   | 161 |
| Diesel exhaust fluid.....                        | 161 |
| Diesel fuel system bleeding .....                | 228 |
| Door open .....                                  | 113 |
| Doors.....                                       | 32  |
| Driver assistance systems.....                   | 174 |
| Driver Information Centre.....                   | 113 |
| Driving characteristics and<br>towing tips ..... | 215 |
| Driving hints.....                               | 150 |

## E

|                                   |          |
|-----------------------------------|----------|
| Electric adjustment .....         | 40       |
| Electrical system.....            | 239      |
| Electric parking brake.....       | 108, 169 |
| Electric parking brake fault..... | 108      |
| Electronic climate control system | 141      |
| Electronic driving programmes ..  | 166      |

|  |               |
|--|---------------|
| Electronic key system.....                                       | 23            |
| Electronic Stability Control.....                                | 172           |
| Electronic Stability Control and<br>Traction Control system..... | 109           |
| Electronic Stability Control off.....                            | 109           |
| Emergency call.....  | 127           |
| End-of-life vehicle recovery .....                               | 221           |
| Engine compartment fuse box ...                                  | 240           |
| Engine coolant .....   | 224           |
| Engine coolant temperature .....                                 | 110           |
| Engine coolant temperature<br>gauge .....                        | 104           |
| Engine data .....  | 277           |
| Engine exhaust .....   | 159           |
| Engine identification.....                                       | 274           |
| Engine oil .....   | 223, 271, 275 |
| Engine oil pressure .....  | 110           |
| Entry lighting .....   | 137           |
| Event data recorders.....  | 289           |
| Exhaust filter.....  | 159           |
| Exit lighting .....  | 137           |
| Exterior care .....  | 265           |
| Exterior light .....   | 111           |
| Exterior lighting .....  | 13, 128       |
| Exterior mirrors.....  | 40            |

## F

|                       |     |
|-----------------------|-----|
| Fault .....           | 167 |
| First aid kit .....   | 86  |
| Fixed air vents ..... | 147 |

|                                    |               |
|------------------------------------|---------------|
| Floor mats.....                    | 267           |
| Folding mirrors .....              | 41            |
| Following distance.....            | 109           |
| Following distance indication..... | 187           |
| Forward collision alert.....       | 185           |
| Front airbag system .....          | 64            |
| Front fog lights .....             | 112, 134, 231 |
| Front pedestrian protection.....   | 191           |
| Front seats.....                   | 49            |
| Front storage.....                 | 72            |
| Fuel.....                          | 210           |
| Fuel for diesel engines .....      | 212           |
| Fuel for petrol engines .....      | 210           |
| Fuel gauge .....                   | 104           |
| Fuses .....                        | 239           |

## G

|                           |     |
|---------------------------|-----|
| Gauges.....               | 102 |
| Gear selection .....      | 165 |
| Gear shifting.....        | 109 |
| General information ..... | 214 |
| Glovebox .....            | 71  |

## H

|                                  |          |
|----------------------------------|----------|
| Halogen headlights .....         | 229      |
| Hand brake.....                  | 168, 169 |
| Hazard warning flashers .....    | 133      |
| Headlight flash .....            | 131      |
| Headlight range adjustment ..... | 131      |
| Headlights.....                  | 128      |
| Headlights when driving abroad   | 131      |

|                                 |          |
|---------------------------------|----------|
| Head restraint adjustment ..... | 8        |
| Head restraints .....           | 48       |
| Heated mirrors .....            | 41       |
| Heated rear window .....        | 45       |
| Heated steering wheel .....     | 91       |
| Heated windscreen.....          | 45       |
| Heating .....                   | 56, 58   |
| High beam .....                 | 111, 131 |
| High beam assist.....           | 111, 129 |
| Hill start assist .....         | 171      |
| Horn .....                      | 14, 92   |

## I

|  |          |
|--|----------|
| Identification plate .....                     | 274      |
| Ignition switch positions .....                | 150      |
| Immobiliser .....                              | 40, 111  |
| Indicators.....                                | 102      |
| Inductive charging.....                        | 96       |
| Info Display .....                             | 119      |
| Information displays.....                      | 113      |
| Instrument cluster .....                       | 98       |
| Instrument panel fuse box .....                | 242      |
| Instrument panel illumination<br>control ..... | 135      |
| Instrument panel overview .....                | 10       |
| Interior care .....                            | 267      |
| Interior lighting.....                         | 135      |
| Interior lights .....                          | 136, 239 |
| Interior mirrors.....                          | 42       |

|                                    |     |
|------------------------------------|-----|
| Interruption of power supply ..... | 167 |
| Introduction .....                 | 3   |

## J

|                     |     |
|---------------------|-----|
| Jump starting ..... | 261 |
|---------------------|-----|

## K

|                              |    |
|------------------------------|----|
| Key, memorised settings..... | 25 |
| Keys .....                   | 21 |
| Keys, locks.....             | 21 |

## L

|                                 |          |
|---------------------------------|----------|
| Lane keep assist.....           | 109, 208 |
| Lashing eyes .....              | 81       |
| LED headlights.....             | 111, 132 |
| Lighting features.....          | 137      |
| Light switch .....              | 128      |
| Load compartment .....          | 32, 73   |
| Load compartment cover .....    | 79       |
| Load compartment fuse box ..... | 244      |
| Loading information .....       | 88       |
| Low fuel .....                  | 111      |

## M

|                                   |     |
|-----------------------------------|-----|
| Malfunction indicator light ..... | 108 |
| Manual anti-dazzle .....          | 42  |
| Manual mode .....                 | 166 |
| Manual seat adjustment.....       | 50  |
| Manual transmission .....         | 168 |
| Manual windows .....              | 43  |
| Massage.....                      | 57  |

|                           |     |
|---------------------------|-----|
| Maximum speed.....        | 247 |
| Memorised settings.....   | 25  |
| Mirror adjustment .....   | 9   |
| Misted light covers ..... | 135 |

## N

|                              |     |
|------------------------------|-----|
| New vehicle running-in ..... | 150 |
| Number plate light .....     | 238 |

## O

|                               |          |
|-------------------------------|----------|
| Object detection systems..... | 193      |
| Odometer .....                | 103      |
| Oil, engine.....              | 271, 275 |
| Outside temperature .....     | 95       |
| Overrun cut-off .....         | 155      |

## P

|                             |         |
|-----------------------------|---------|
| Parking .....               | 19, 158 |
| Parking assist .....        | 193     |
| Parking brake .....         | 169     |
| Parking lights .....        | 135     |
| Particulate filter.....     | 159     |
| Pedestrian detection.....   | 112     |
| Performance .....           | 278     |
| Performing work .....       | 222     |
| Power button.....           | 151     |
| Power outlets .....         | 95      |
| Power seat adjustment ..... | 52      |
| Power windows .....         | 43      |
| Preheating .....            | 110     |
| Puncture.....               | 257     |

|  |               |  |  |
|--|---------------|--|--|
| <b>Q</b>                                   |               |  |  |
| Quickheat.....                             | 147           |  |  |
| <b>R</b>                                   |               |  |  |
| Radio Frequency Identification (RFID)..... | 292           |  |  |
| Radio remote control .....                 | 22            |  |  |
| REACH.....                                 | 288           |  |  |
| Reading lights .....                       | 136           |  |  |
| Rear floor storage cover .....             | 80            |  |  |
| Rear fog light .....                       | 112, 134, 231 |  |  |
| Rear seats.....                            | 57            |  |  |
| Rear view camera .....                     | 202           |  |  |
| Rear window wiper and washer . .           | 94            |  |  |
| Recommended fluids and lubricants .....    | 271, 275      |  |  |
| Refuelling .....                           | 212           |  |  |
| Registered trademarks.....                 | 289           |  |  |
| Retained power off.....                    | 153           |  |  |
| Reversing lights .....                     | 135           |  |  |
| Ride control systems.....                  | 171           |  |  |
| Roof.....                                  | 46            |  |  |
| Roof load.....                             | 88            |  |  |
| Roof rack .....                            | 87            |  |  |
| <b>S</b>                                   |               |  |  |
| Safety belts.....                          | 58            |  |  |
| Safety net .....                           | 84            |  |  |
| Seat adjustment .....                      | 7             |  |  |
| Seat belt .....                            | 8             |  |  |
| Seat belt reminder .....                   | 106           |  |  |
| Seat belts .....                           | 58            |  |  |
| Seat heating                               |               |  |  |
| Seat heating, front.....                   | 56            |  |  |
| Seat heating, rear.....                    | 58            |  |  |
| Seat position .....                        | 49            |  |  |
| Selective catalytic reduction.....         | 161           |  |  |
| Selector lever.....                        | 165           |  |  |
| Service .....                              | 148, 270      |  |  |
| Service display .....                      | 105           |  |  |
| Service information .....                  | 270           |  |  |
| Side airbag system .....                   | 64            |  |  |
| Side blind spot alert.....                 | 201           |  |  |
| Sidelights.....                            | 128           |  |  |
| Side turn lights .....                     | 237           |  |  |
| Software update.....                       | 288           |  |  |
| Spare wheel .....                          | 257           |  |  |
| Speed limiter.....                         | 112, 176      |  |  |
| Speedometer .....                          | 102           |  |  |
| Starting and operating.....                | 150           |  |  |
| Starting off .....                         | 18            |  |  |
| Starting the engine .....                  | 153           |  |  |
| Steering .....                             | 150           |  |  |
| Steering wheel adjustment .....            | 9, 91         |  |  |
| Steering wheel controls .....              | 91            |  |  |
| Stop-start system.....                     | 155           |  |  |
| Storage.....                               | 71            |  |  |
| Storage compartments.....                  | 71            |  |  |
| Sunroof .....                              | 46            |  |  |
| Sun visor lights .....                     | 136           |  |  |
| Sun visors .....                           | 45            |  |  |
| Symbols .....                              | 4             |  |  |
| <b>T</b>                                   |               |  |  |
| Tachometer .....                           | 104           |  |  |
| Tail lights .....                          | 231           |  |  |
| Three-point seat belt .....                | 59            |  |  |
| Tools .....                                | 246           |  |  |
| Tow bar.....                               | 214           |  |  |
| Towing.....                                | 214, 263      |  |  |
| Towing another vehicle .....               | 264           |  |  |
| Towing equipment .....                     | 216           |  |  |
| Towing the vehicle .....                   | 263           |  |  |
| Traction Control system .....              | 171           |  |  |
| Traction Control system off.....           | 110           |  |  |
| Traffic sign assistant.....                | 113, 204      |  |  |
| Trailer coupling.....                      | 214           |  |  |
| Trailer stability assist .....             | 219           |  |  |
| Trailer towing .....                       | 215           |  |  |
| Transmission .....                         | 17            |  |  |
| Transmission display .....                 | 164           |  |  |
| Tread depth .....                          | 252           |  |  |
| Trip odometer .....                        | 103           |  |  |
| Turn lights .....                          | 106, 134      |  |  |
| Tyre chains .....                          | 253           |  |  |
| Tyre designations .....                    | 247           |  |  |
| Tyre pressure .....                        | 248           |  |  |
| Tyre pressure monitoring system.....       | 110, 249      |  |  |

|                       |     |
|-----------------------|-----|
| Tyre pressures .....  | 282 |
| Tyre repair kit ..... | 253 |

## U

|                                |     |
|--------------------------------|-----|
| Ultrasonic parking assist..... | 193 |
| Upholstery.....                | 267 |
| Uplevel display.....           | 113 |
| USB port.....                  | 95  |
| Using this manual .....        | 3   |

## V

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| Vehicle battery .....                      | 226 |
| Vehicle checks.....                        | 222 |
| Vehicle data.....                          | 275 |
| Vehicle data recording and<br>privacy..... | 289 |
| Vehicle detected ahead.....                | 112 |
| Vehicle dimensions .....                   | 280 |
| Vehicle identification number ....         | 273 |
| Vehicle jack.....                          | 246 |
| Vehicle messages .....                     | 120 |
| Vehicle personalisation .....              | 122 |
| Vehicle security.....                      | 37  |
| Vehicle specific data .....                | 3   |
| Vehicle storage.....                       | 221 |
| Vehicle tools.....                         | 246 |
| Vehicle unlocking .....                    | 6   |
| Ventilating.....                           | 56  |

## W

|                                  |     |
|----------------------------------|-----|
| Warning chimes .....             | 121 |
| Warning lights.....              | 102 |
| Warning triangle .....           | 86  |
| Washer and wiper systems .....   | 14  |
| Washer fluid .....               | 225 |
| Wheel changing .....             | 257 |
| Wheel covers .....               | 252 |
| Wheels and tyres .....           | 247 |
| Windows.....                     | 42  |
| Windscreen.....                  | 42  |
| Windscreen wiper and washer .... | 92  |
| Winter tyres .....               | 247 |
| Wiper blade replacement .....    | 228 |



**[www.opel.com](http://www.opel.com)**

Copyright by Opel Automobile GmbH, Rüsselsheim, Germany.

The information contained in this publication is effective as of the date indicated below. Opel Automobile GmbH reserves the right to make changes to the technical specifications, features and design of the vehicles relative to the information in this publication as well as changes to the publication itself.

Edition: August 2020, Opel Automobile GmbH, Rüsselsheim.

Printed on chlorine-free bleached paper.

**ID-OASKOBSE2008-en**

